

USMARC Format for Authority Data
SUMMARY STATEMENT OF CONTENT DESIGNATORS

LEADER

<i>Character Position</i>	<i>Name</i>
00-04	Logical record length
05	Record status
06	Type of record
07-09	Undefined character positions
10	Indicator count
11	Subfield code count
12-16	Base address of data
17	Encoding level
18-19	Undefined character positions
20-23	<i>Entry map</i>
20	Length of the length-of-field portion
21	Length of the starting-character-position portion
22	Length of the implementation-defined portion
23	Undefined Entry map character position

DIRECTORY

VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS

001	Control Number
005	Date and Time of Latest Transaction
008	Fixed-Length Data Elements

<i>Character Position</i>	<i>Name</i>
00-05	Date entered on file
06	Direct/indirect geographic subdivision
07	Romanization scheme
08	Undefined character position
09	Kind of record
10	Descriptive cataloging rules
11	Subject heading system/thesaurus
12	Type of series
13	Numbered/unnumbered series
14	Heading use—main or added entry
15	Heading use—subject added entry
16	Heading use—series added entry
17	Type of subject subdivision
18-27	Undefined character positions
28	Type of government agency
29	Reference evaluation
30	Undefined character position
31	Record update in process
32	Undifferentiated personal name
33	Level of establishment
34-37	Undefined character positions
38	Modified record
39	Cataloging source

Format Summary

VARIABLE DATA FIELDS

Control Information, Numbers, and Codes

010	Library of Congress Control Number
014	Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item
020	International Standard Book Number
022	International Standard Serial Number
035	System Control Number
040	Cataloging Source
042	Authentication Code
043	Geographic Area Code
045	Time Period of Heading
050	Library of Congress Call Number
052	Geographic Classification Code
053	LC Classification Number
060	National Library of Medicine Call Number
066	Character Sets Present
070	National Agricultural Library Call Number
072	Subject Category Code
073	Subdivision Usage
082	Dewey Decimal Call Number
083	Dewey Decimal Classification Number
09X	Local Call Numbers

Established Headings

100	Heading—Personal Name
110	Heading—Corporate Name
111	Heading—Meeting Name
130	Heading—Uniform Title
150	Heading—Topical Term
151	Heading—Geographic Name

Tracings and References

260	Complex See Reference—Subject
360	Complex See Also Reference—Subject
400	See From Tracing—Personal Name
410	See From Tracing—Corporate Name
411	See From Tracing—Meeting Name
430	See From Tracing—Uniform Title
450	See From Tracing—Topical Term
451	See From Tracing—Geographic Name
500	See Also From Tracing—Personal Name
510	See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name
511	See Also From Tracing—Meeting Name
530	See Also From Tracing—Uniform Title
550	See Also From Tracing—Topical Term
551	See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name
663	Complex See Also Reference—Name
664	Complex See Reference—Name
665	History Reference
666	General Explanatory Reference—Name

Series Treatment Information

640	Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation
641	Series Numbering Peculiarities
642	Series Numbering Example
643	Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body

Format Summary

644	Series Analysis Practice
645	Series Tracing Practice
646	Series Classification Practice
<i>Notes</i>	
667	Nonpublic General Note
670	Source Data Found
675	Source Data Not Found
678	Epitome
680	Public General Note
681	Subject Example Tracing Note
682	Deleted Heading Information
688	Application History Note
880	Alternate Graphic Representation

Leader*M*Indicators and Subfield Codes

The Leader has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions

00-04	Logical record length	<i>M</i>
05	Record status	<i>M</i>
	n New	<i>A</i>
	c Corrected or revised	<i>A</i>
	a Increase in encoding level	<i>A</i>
	d Deleted (other)	<i>A</i>
	s Deleted; heading split into two or more headings	<i>A</i>
	x Deleted; heading replaced by another heading	<i>A</i>
06	Type of record	<i>M</i>
	z Authority data	<i>M</i>
07-09	Undefined character positions	<i>M</i>
10	Indicator count	<i>M</i>
11	Subfield code count	<i>M</i>
12-16	Base address of data	<i>M</i>
17	Encoding level	<i>M</i>
	n Complete authority record	<i>A</i>
	o Incomplete authority record	<i>A</i>
18-19	Undefined character positions	<i>M</i>
<i>20-23 Entry map</i>		
20	Length of the length-of-field portion	<i>M</i>
21	Length of the starting-character-position portion	<i>M</i>
22	Length of the implementation-defined portion	<i>M</i>
23	Undefined Entry map character position	<i>M</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The Leader is the first field of an authority record. It is fixed in length at 24 character positions (00-23). The Leader consists of data elements that contain numbers or coded values that define the parameters for the processing of the record.

Leader

Character positions 20-23 comprise the Entry map for the Directory. They contain four single-character numbers that specify the structure of the entries in the Directory. More detailed information about the structure of the Leader is contained in *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes*.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

/00-04 LOGICAL RECORD LENGTH

The Logical record length character positions contain a five-character number equal to the length of the entire record, including itself and the record terminator. The number is right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

/05 RECORD STATUS

The Record status character position contains a one-character alphabetic code that indicates the relationship of the record to a file for file maintenance purposes.

a - Increase in encoding level

Code a indicates that the Encoding level (Leader/17) of the record has been changed from o (Incomplete authority record) to n (Complete authority record).

c - Corrected or revised

Code c indicates that an addition/change has been made to the record. The change, however, does not constitute an increase in the Encoding level (Leader/17) of the record.

d - Deleted (other)

Code d indicates that the record has been deleted. This code is used for those situations when neither code s nor code x is appropriate, or when an organization chooses not to use code s or x. Some level of manual intervention may be needed to effect the change in bibliographic records because the deleted heading may or may not be carried as a 4XX See From Tracing field in other authority records and a 682 field explaining the delete may be present in the record marked for deletion.

Leader/05 d

150 \$0#aFruit processing

682 \$0#iThis heading has been replaced by the heading#aFruit—
 Processing,#ia heading not distributed because it uses a
 freefloating subdivision controlled by a pattern heading.

Leader/05 d

150 \$0#aHistory

n - New

Code n indicates that the record is a newly input record.

Leader

s - Deleted; heading split into two or more headings

Code s indicates that the record has been deleted from a file because the heading has been split into two or more headings, requiring a new authority record for each. The heading from the deleted record is included in each of the new authority records as a tracing in a 4XX See From Tracing field.

An automated authority control system can scan other authority records until it locates two records which contain the deleted heading used as a 4XX See From Tracing. At that time, the system can display the deleted heading and the two replacement headings for review or take other automatic actions. (When a heading is split, a computer cannot automatically replace the old heading in bibliographic records. Manual intervention is required to determine which of the new headings is appropriate in each bibliographic record containing the old heading.)

Leader/05 s
150 þ0‡aBuddha and Buddhism

Leader/05 n
100 00‡aGautama Buddha
450 þ0‡aBuddha and Buddhism

Leader/05 n
150 þ0‡aBuddhism
450 þ0‡aBuddha and Buddhism

x - Deleted; heading replaced by another heading

Code x indicates that the record has been deleted from a file and that a new authority record in which the heading from the deleted record appears as a 4XX See From Tracing field has been added to the file. (In a system where authority control is linked to the bibliographic file, a computer can effect the one-to-one replacement indicated by code x without manual intervention.)

Leader/05 x
150 þ0‡aOleomargarine

Leader/05 n
150 þ0‡aMargarine
450 þ0‡aOleomargarine

/06 TYPE OF RECORD

The Type of record character position contains a one-character alphabetic code that indicates the characteristics of and defines the components of the record.

z - Authority data

Code z indicates that the content of the record constitutes an authority record. The specific kind of authority record is identified by the code in 008/09.

Leader

/07-09 UNDEFINED CHARACTER POSITIONS

These three character positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

ØØØ - Undefined character positions

/10 INDICATOR COUNT

The Indicator count character position contains a one-character number equal to the number of indicators occurring in each variable data field. (An indicator character position contains a code which conveys information that interprets or supplements the data found in the field.) In USMARC, two character positions at the beginning of each variable data field are reserved for indicators; therefore, the Indicator count is always 2.

2 - Number of character positions used for indicators

/11 SUBFIELD CODE COUNT

The Subfield code count character position contains a one-character number equal to the number of character positions used for a subfield code in variable data fields. (Each data element in a variable data field is identified by a subfield code.) In USMARC, a subfield code consists of a delimiter (#) and a lowercase alphabetic or numeric data element identifier; therefore, the Subfield code count is always 2.

2 - Number of character positions used for a subfield code

/12-16 BASE ADDRESS OF DATA

The Base address of data character positions contain a five-character number that indicates the first character position of the first variable control field in the record. The number is the base from which the starting character position of all the other fields in the record is addressed in the Directory. (The starting character position in the Directory entry for each field of the record is relative to the first character of the first variable control field rather than the beginning of the record.) The Base address of data is equal to the sum of the lengths of the Leader and the Directory, including the field terminator character at the end of the Directory. The number is right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

<number> - Length of Leader and Directory (including the Directory field terminator character)

/17 ENCODING LEVEL

The Encoding level character position contains a one-character alphabetic code that indicates whether the authority record is complete.

n - Complete authority record

Code n indicates that the authority record is complete. The record meets the national level record requirements for content and content designation.

Leader

o - Incomplete authority record

Code o indicates that the authority record is incomplete because the record is in process. The record may or may not meet the national level record requirements.

/18-19 UNDEFINED CHARACTER POSITIONS

These two character positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

ØØ - Undefined character positions

/20 LENGTH OF THE LENGTH-OF-FIELD PORTION

In USMARC, the length-of-field portion of each Directory entry is always 4 character positions in length.

4 - Number of characters in the length-of-field portion of a Directory entry

/21 LENGTH OF THE STARTING-CHARACTER-POSITION PORTION

In USMARC, the starting-character-position portion of each Directory entry is always 5 character positions in length.

5 - Number of characters in the starting-character-position portion of a Directory entry

/22 LENGTH OF THE IMPLEMENTATION-DEFINED PORTION

In USMARC, a Directory entry does not contain an implementation-defined portion; this character position always contains a 0.

0 - Number of characters in the implementation-defined portion of a Directory entry

/23 UNDEFINED ENTRY MAP CHARACTER POSITION

In USMARC, this character position is undefined; it always contains a 0.

0 - Undefined entry map character position

INPUT CONVENTIONS

System-Generated Elements

The following Leader elements are usually system generated:

- 00-04 Logical record length
- 07-09 Undefined character positions
- 10 Indicator count
- 11 Subfield code count
- 12-16 Base address of data

Leader

- 18-19 Undefined character positions
20-23 Entry map

Other Leader elements may also be system generated depending upon the capabilities of an individual system:

- 05 Record status
06 Type of record
17 Encoding level

Capitalization

Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes

| **CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY**

- /05 Record status
d - Deleted (other)
x - Deleted; heading replaced by another heading

In 1983, the definitions of codes d (Record deleted because heading is replaced by another heading) and x (Record deleted for reason not covered by other codes) were reversed to maintain consistency with the definition of code d in the *USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data*.

Directory*M*Indicators and Subfield Codes

The Directory has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions

00-02	Tag	<i>M</i>
03-06	Field length	<i>M</i>
07-11	Starting character position	<i>M</i>

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The Directory consists of a series of fixed length entries, with one entry for each variable field (control or data) present in a record. Each Directory entry is 12 character positions in length and contains three portions: the field tag, the field length, and the starting character position. The Directory immediately follows the Leader at the beginning of the record and is located at character position 24. The Field length and Starting character position portions of the Directory are defined by Leader/20-23 (Entry map) as being 4 and 5 characters in length, respectively. Because a field tag is always 3 characters, the length of the Tag portion of the Directory is not specified in the Entry map.

More detailed information about the structure of the Directory entries is contained in *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes*.

DESCRIPTION OF A DIRECTORY ENTRY**/00-02 Tag**

The Tag portion of each Directory entry consists of three ASCII numeric or lowercase alphabetic characters that identify an associated variable field.

/03-06 Field length

The Field length portion of each Directory entry consists of four ASCII numeric characters that indicate the length of the variable field to which the entry corresponds. This length includes the indicators, subfield codes, data, and the field terminator associated with the field. A Field length number of less than four digits is right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

Directory

/07-11 Starting character position

The Starting character position of each Directory entry contains five ASCII numeric characters that indicate the starting character position of the variable field to which the entry corresponds relative to the Base address of data (Leader/12-16) of the record. A Starting character position number of less than five digits is right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

■ EXAMPLE:

<u>Tag</u>	<u>Field length</u>	Starting character position
Entry 1	001	00000
Entry 2	008	00013
Entry 3	100	00054

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Each Directory entry is system generated.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Leader/20-23 Entry Map
USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes

00X Control Fields—General Information

*National Level
Requirement*

001 Control Number (NR)	M
005 Date and Time of Latest Transaction (NR)	M
008 Fixed-Length Data Elements (NR)	M

DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The control fields contain the record control number and other kinds of control and coded information that are used in the processing of USMARC authority records. These fields have no indicators or subfield codes.

Each data element in the fixed-length field 008 is positionally defined. A more detailed explanation of positionally defined data elements can be found in the section describing field 008.

001 Control Number (NR)*M*Indicators and Subfield Codes

This field has no indicators or subfield codes.

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the control number assigned by the organization creating, using, or distributing the record. For interchange purposes, documentation of the structure of the control number and input conventions must be provided to exchange partners by the organization initiating the interchange. An organization receiving a record may move the control number of the distributing system from field 001 to field 035 (System Control Number) and place its own control number in field 001.

The structure of the Library of Congress control number is described in field 010 (Library of Congress Control Number). The control number in records distributed by LC is contained in field 001. An organization using an LC record may move the LC control number from field 001 to field 010 and place its own control number in field 001.

■ EXAMPLES

001 nþþ86742756þ
001 shþ85008277þ
001 nrþ86000001þ
001 noþ86000001þ
001 nwþ86000001þ

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Field 001 may be system generated.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

010 Library of Congress Control Number
035 System Control Number

005 Date and Time of Latest Transaction (NR)

M

Indicators and Subfield Codes

This field has no indicators or subfield codes.

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains 16 characters that specify the date and time of the latest record transaction. The date and time serve as a version identifier for the record.

The date is recorded according to *Representation for Calendar Date and Ordinal Date for Information Interchange* (ANSI X3.30). The date requires 8 numeric characters in the pattern *yyyymmdd* (4 for the year, 2 for the month, and 2 for the day).

The time is recorded according to *Representations of Local Time of the Day for Information Interchange* (ANSI X3.43). The time requires 8 numeric characters in the pattern *hhmmss.f* (2 for the hour, 2 for the minute, 2 for the second, and 2 for a decimal fraction of the second, including the decimal point). The 24-hour clock (00-23) is used.

The date on which a record is first entered into machine-readable form is contained in field 008/00-05. The Date entered on file never changes.

■ EXAMPLE

005 19860901141236.0
[Sept. 1, 1986, 2:12:36 P.M.]

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Field 005 should be system generated at date and time of latest transaction on a record.

RELATED USMARC FIELD/DOCUMENT

008/00-05 Date entered on file

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

Representation for Calendar Date and Ordinal Date for Information Interchange (ANSI X3.30)

Representations of Local Time of the Day for Information Interchange (ANSI X3.43)

008 Fixed-Length Data Elements—General Information (NR) M

Indicators and Subfield Codes

This field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions

00-05	Date entered on file	M
06	Direct/indirect geographic subdivision	O
07	Romanization scheme	O
08	Undefined character position	O
09	Kind of record	O
10	Descriptive cataloging rules	M
11	Subject heading system/thesaurus	M
12	Type of series	M
13	Numbered/unnumbered series	M
14	Heading use—main or added entry	M
15	Heading use—subject added entry	M
16	Heading use—series added entry	M
17	Type of subject subdivision	M
18-27	Undefined character positions	O
28	Type of government agency	O
29	Reference evaluation	O
30	Undefined character position	M
31	Record update in process	O
32	Undifferentiated personal name	M
33	Level of establishment	M
34-37	Undefined character positions	M
38	Modified record	O
39	Cataloging source	M

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains 40 character positions (00-39) that provide coded information about the record as a whole or about special aspects of the 1XX heading or 4XX/5XX tracing fields. These coded data elements are potentially useful for retrieval and data management purposes.

The data elements are positionally defined. Character positions that are not defined contain a blank (Ø) or a fill character (|). All defined character positions must contain either a defined code or a fill character. The fill character is used in a defined character position when the National Level Requirement code is O (Optional) and the cataloging organization makes no attempt to code the character position. Code n (Not applicable), when it is defined for a data element, indicates that the character position definition does not apply to the record.

008

INPUT CONVENTIONS

System-Generated Data Elements

008/00-05 (Date entered on file) is usually system generated. System generation of other 008 data elements depends upon the capabilities of an individual system.

Capitalization

Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

| CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

008/35-37 Language of heading code [OBSOLETE]

This definition of these character positions was made obsolete in 1986. Records created prior to 1986 may contain a language code taken from the *USMARC Code List for Languages* or a § (blank) or a fill character (|) in each of these three character positions.

008/00-05 Date entered on file*M***CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

Six numeric characters specify the date the record was first entered into machine-readable form. The date is given in the pattern *yyymmdd* (*yy* for the year, *mm* for the month, and *dd* for the day).

The date entered on file in 008/00-05 is never changed. The date and time of latest transaction information in field 005 changes each time a transaction is made to the record. The latest transaction information enables an organization handling more than one version of a record to identify the most current version.

■ EXAMPLE

008/00-05 860304

*[The record was entered into a system on March 4, 1986.]***INPUT CONVENTIONS**

This data element is usually system generated.

RELATED USMARC FIELD/DOCUMENT

005 Date and Time of Latest Transaction

008/06 Direct/indirect geographic subdivision code

o

Codes

ø	Not subdivided geographically	o
d	Subdivided geographically—direct	o
i	Subdivided geographically—indirect	o
n	Not applicable	o

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character code indicates whether the 1XX heading can be subdivided geographically by the name of a country or other jurisdiction, region or geographic feature. If the heading can be subdivided geographically, the code identifies the method of subdivision that is used. In extended subject heading records, 008/06 coding is based on the entire heading, including the subject subdivisions.

Code ø, d or i is used only in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) that also is appropriate for use as a subject added entry in bibliographic records (008/15, code a). Code n is used in an established heading record that is not appropriate for use as a subject added entry in bibliographic records (008/15, code b) and in a reference, subdivision, or node label record (008/09, code other than a or f).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

ø - Not subdivided geographically

Code ø indicates that the 1XX heading cannot be subdivided geographically.

008/06 ø
100 10#aHorowitz, Mordekhai

008/06 ø
150 ø0#aAir defenses

008/06 ø
151 ø0#aAustria

008/06

d - Subdivided geographically—direct

Code d indicates that the IXX heading can be subdivided geographically using the direct subdivision method. In this subdivision method, the heading is followed immediately by the name of the specific place to which the heading is limited without the interposition of a subdivision for the name of the larger geographic entity.

008/06 d

150 \$0+aArt

[*Subject heading can be subdivided directly, e.g., Art—Paris.*]

i - Subdivided geographically—indirect

Code i indicates that the IXX heading can be subdivided geographically using the indirect subdivision method. In this subdivision method, a subdivision for the name of the larger geographic entity is interposed between the heading and the subdivision for the specific place to which the heading is limited.

008/06 i

150 \$0+aArt

[*Subject heading can be subdivided indirectly, e.g., Art—Italy—Rome.*]

008/06 i

110 20+aUnited Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization

[*Subject heading can be subdivided indirectly, e.g., United Nations
Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization—France—Paris.*]

008/06 i

100 10+aShakespeare, William, #d1564-1616+xHomes and haunts

[*Subject heading may be subdivided indirectly, e.g., Shakespeare, William,
1564-1616—Homes and haunts—England—London.*]

n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the IXX heading is an unestablished heading or is an established heading that is not appropriate for use as a subject added entry in bibliographic records.

008/06 n

008/09 b [*reference record (untraced reference)*]

008/15 b [*code indicating heading may not be used as subject added entry*]

150 \$0+aPronunciation

260 \$0+\$isubdivision#aPronunciation#iunder names of languages and subjects,
e.g.#italian language—Pronunciation; Names—Pronunciation

008/06 n

008/09 a [*established heading record*]

008/15 b [*code indicating heading may not be used as subject added entry*]

151 \$0+aCeylon

008/06

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/15 Heading use—subject added entry

008/07 Romanization scheme code

o

Codes

a	International standard	o
b	National standard	o
c	National library association standard	o
d	National library or bibliographic agency standard	o
e	Local standard	o
f	Standard of unknown origin	o
g	Conventional romanization or conventional form of name in language of cataloging agency	o
n	Not applicable	o

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character alphabetic code indicates that the 1XX heading field contains the romanized form of a name or uniform title and identifies the romanization scheme used. If the 1XX heading is not a romanized form, code n is used.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

» CODES

a - International standard

Code a indicates that the romanization scheme used is an international standard, e.g., one of the tables published by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO).

008/07 a

100 10#aŠalnm, Mošeh

[Heading romanized following the ISO 259-1984 table for Hebrew.]

b - National standard

Code b indicates that the romanization scheme used is a national standard, e.g., one published by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI).

008/07

c - National library association standard

Code c indicates that the romanization scheme used is a national library association standard, e.g., the American Library Association (ALA)/Library of Congress (LC) romanization tables published in the Library of Congress *Cataloging Service Bulletin*.

008/07 c

100 10+\$hŞternbukh, Moseheh

[Heading romanized following the ALA/LC romanization table for Hebrew.]

d - National library or bibliographic agency standard

Code d indicates that the romanization scheme used is a national library or bibliographic agency standard.

e - Local standard

Code e indicates that the romanization scheme used is a local standard.

f - Standard of unknown origin

Code f indicates that the romanization scheme used is a standard of unknown origin.

g - Conventional romanization or conventional form of name in language of cataloging agency

Code g indicates that the romanization scheme used is a conventional romanization or that the 1XX heading is a conventional form of name in the language of the cataloging agency.

008/07 g

100 10+\$aSternbuch, Moses

*[A pre-AACR 2 form of heading used by the Library of Congress.
Biblical forenames were romanized following the King James version
of the name.]*

n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the 1XX heading is not romanized.

008/08 Undefined character position

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This character position is undefined; it may contain a blank (Ø) or a fill character (|)

008/09 Kind of record

M

Codes

a	Established heading record	A
f	Established heading and subdivision record	A
b	Reference record (untraced reference)	A
c	Reference record (traced reference)	A
g	Reference and subdivision record	A
d	Subdivision record	A
e	Node label record	A

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether the authority record represents an established or unestablished 1XX heading. The 1XX field in an established heading record or an established heading and subdivision record contains an established heading. Reference, subdivision, and node label records contain an unestablished heading in field 1XX. If the record is a reference record, codes b and c indicate whether the 1XX heading is traced as a 4XX See From Tracing field in authority records for each heading referred to in the reference record. Definitions of the terms used in the description of this data element are in the *Introduction* to this document. An explanation of the use of tracings and references in the authority format is provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

a - Established heading record

Code a indicates that the 1XX field contains an established heading. An established heading record may also contain 4XX/5XX tracing fields for variant and related headings, and notes recording information such as the source used to establish the heading and information explaining scope and usage. Subject subdivision subfields \$x, \$y, and/or \$z may be present in the 1XX field in an extended subject heading.

If an established heading may also be used as a subject subdivision, code f is used if an organization uses a single authority record to convey this dual function. If separate records are used, code a is used in the main (established) term record and code d is used in the subdivision (unestablished) record.

008/09 a
100 10#aMattern, Hermann,\$d1902-1971

008/09

008/09 a
130 \$0+aBulletin (Ahmadu Bello University. Dept. of Geology)

008/09 a
150 \$0+aOptical disks

008/09 a
151 \$0+aYellowstone National Park

008/09 a
151 \$0+aIowa+xDescription and travel+y1981-

b - Reference record (untraced reference)

Code b indicates that the 1XX field contains an unestablished heading and that the 1XX heading is not traced as a 4XX See From Tracing field in any established heading record. The reference record contains a Complex See Reference (260) or a General Explanatory Reference (260 or 666) field to guide the user to an established heading.

If the 1XX heading in a reference record (untraced reference) may also be used as a subject subdivision, code g is used if an organization uses a single authority record to convey this dual function. If separate records are used, code b is used in the reference record and code d is used in the subdivision record.

008/09 b
150 \$0+aDenominative
260 \$0+\$isubdivision+aDenominative+iunder names of languages and groups of languages

008/09 b
100 00+aDe la
666 \$0+\$aNames beginning with this prefix are also entered under La (e.g., La Bretèque, Pierre de) or under the name following the prefix (e.g., Torre, Marie de la)

c - Reference record (traced reference)

Code c indicates that the 1XX field contains an unestablished heading and that the 1XX heading is traced as a 4XX See From Tracing field in the established heading record for each heading referred to in the reference record. The reference record contains a Complex See Reference (260 or 664) field to guide the user to an established heading.

008/09 c
100 10+aReger, Max, #d1873-1916.#tDies irae
664 \$0+\$aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under+bReger, Max, 1873-1916.#tRequiem (Mass)

008/09 c
150 \$0+aAdministration
260 \$0+\$isubdivision+aAdministration+iunder types of institutions e.g.
 +aHospital—Administration [...]

d - Subdivision record

Code d indicates that the 1XX field contains an unestablished heading that may be used as a subject subdivision with an established heading.

If a subdivision term may also be used as an established main term, code f is used if an organization uses a single authority record to convey this dual function. If a subdivision term may also be used as an unestablished reference term, code g is used if an organization uses a single authority record to convey this dual function

008/09 d

150 \$0+adrug effects

e - Node label record

Code e indicates that the 1XX field contains an unestablished term that may be used in the systematic section of a thesaurus to indicate the logical basis on which a category has been divided. This type of heading is also known as a *facet indicator*. The term is not used as an indexing term.

008/09 e

150 \$0+acatalogs by source

f - Established heading and subdivision record

Code f indicates that the 1XX field contains an established heading that may be used as a main term and as a subject subdivision. A single authority record is used to describe this dual function.

008/09 f

150 \$0+aChronology

360 \$0\$+isubdivision+aChronology+iunder appropriate subject terms

008/09 f

151 \$0+aGreat Lakes

680 \$0\$+iThis term is to be used only as a geographic descriptor and may not be subdivided. It may, however, be used to subdivide topical indexing terms.

g - Reference and subdivision record

Code g indicates that the 1XX field in a reference record (untraced reference) contains an unestablished heading that may be used as a reference term and as a subject subdivision. A single authority record is used to describe this dual function.

008/09 g

150 \$0+aDictionaries

260 \$0\$+isubdivision+aDictionaries+iunder specific subject terms

008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules code

M

Codes

c	AACR 2	
d	AACR 2 compatible heading	A
b	AACR 1	A
a	Earlier rules	A
z	Other	A
n	Not applicable	A

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character alphabetic code identifies the descriptive cataloging rules used to formulate the 1XX name, name/title, or uniform title heading in established heading (008/09, code a) or reference records (008/09, code b or c). A 1XX heading formulated according to descriptive cataloging rules that is used as a subject added entry in bibliographic records (008/15, code a) may also be coded for a particular set of subject heading system/thesaurus rules in 008/11. If the 1XX heading is not formulated using descriptive cataloging rules, code n is used.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

a - Earlier rules

Code a indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to descriptive cataloging rules used prior to the 1967 publication of *Anglo-American Cataloging Rules* (AACR 1). *Code a is not used in current AACR authority records.*

008/10 a
100 10#aSmith, John,#dAug. 5, 1882-

008/10 a
110 10#aBirmingham, Eng.#bKing Edward's School
[Headings established using the A.L.A. Cataloging Rules for Author and Title Entries (1949)]

b - AACR 1

Code b indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to *Anglo-American Cataloging Rules* (AACR 1). *Code b is not used in current AACR authority records.*

008/10 b
100 10#aSmith, John,#d1882 (Aug. 5)-

008/10

008/10 b

110 10#*a*United States.*b*87th Congress, 2d session,*d*1962

c - AACR 2

Code c indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to the second edition of *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR 2).

008/10 c

100 10#*a*Smith, John,*d*1882 Aug. 5-

008/10 c

100 10#*a*Francis, D.*q*(Dennis)

008/10 c

008/09 c [reference record (traced reference)]
008/14 b [code indicating heading may not be used as a main or added entry]
100 10#*a*Reger, Max.,*d*1873-1916.*t*Dies irae
664 8#*a*For this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem
search under*b*Reger, Max., 1873-1916.*t*Requiem (Mass)

d - AACR 2 compatible heading

Code d indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading does not follow AACR 2 but the heading is considered compatible with AACR 2. Library of Congress guidelines for AACR 2 compatible personal and corporate name headings are contained in *Cataloging Service Bulletin*, no. 18 (Fall 1982), p. 49-51, and no. 30 (Fall 1985), p. 16-17, respectively.

008/10 d

100 10#*a*Piton, Phillip,*c*Mrs.

z - Other

Code z indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to a set of descriptive cataloging rules other than is specified by one of the other defined codes.

n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the 1XX heading is not a name, name/title, or uniform title formulated according to descriptive cataloging rules. The 1XX heading is not appropriate for use as a main or added entry in bibliographic records (008/14, code b).

008/10 n

008/09 a [established heading record]
008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]
008/14 b [code indicating heading may not be used as a main or added entry]
151 8#*a*Red River Valley (Minn. and N.D.-Man.)

008/10 n

008/09 a [established heading record]

008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]

008/14 b [code indicating heading may not be used as a main or added entry]

150 \$0+aCommunicative Disorders

008/10 n

008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]

008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]

008/14 b [code indicating heading may not be used as a main or added entry]

150 \$0+aSecurity measures

260 \$0+\$1subdivision+aSecurity measures+under particular subjects, e.g.

+aIndustry—Security measures; United States. Atomic Energy
Commission—Security measures

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

Cataloging Service Bulletin, no. 18 (Fall 1982) and no. 30 (Fall 1985)

008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus

M

Codes

a	Library of Congress Subject Headings	A
b	LC subject headings for children's literature	A
c	Medical Subject Headings	A
d	National Agricultural Library subject authority file	A
k	Canadian Subject Headings	A
v	Répertoire des vedettes-matière	A
r	Art and Architecture Thesaurus	A
z	Other	A
n	Not applicable	A

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character alphabetic code identifies the subject heading system/thesaurus conventions used to formulate the subject name or term 1XX heading in established heading (008/09, code a or f), reference, subdivision, or node label records (008/09, code b, d, g, or e). A 1XX heading formulated according to descriptive cataloging rules (008/10) that is used as a subject added entry in bibliographic records may also be coded for a particular set of conventions 008/11. If the 1XX heading does not conform to subject heading/thesaurus conventions, code n is used.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

a - Library of Congress Subject Headings

Code a indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH). (Code a is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the 1XX heading is appropriate for use in LCSH.)

008/11 a
100 10#aWagner, Richard, #d1813-1883#xPictorial works

008/11 a
150 #0#aPASCAL (Computer program language)

008/11 a
151 #0#aUnited States#xHistory#yCivil War, 1861-1865#xArt and the war

008/11

008/11 a
008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]
008/15 a [code indicating heading may be used as a subject added entry]
100 10#Shai, Mordekhai

008/11 a
008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]
008/15 b [code indicating heading may not be used as a subject added entry]
150 þ0#Fatigue of metals
260 þþ#isubdivision#Fatigue#under particular metals, e.g.#Steel—Fatigue

b - LC subject headings for children's literature

Code b indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to the "AC Subject Headings" section of *Library of Congress Subject Headings*. (Code b is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the heading is appropriate for the LC Annotated Card Program.)

008/11 b
100 10#aColumbus, Christopher

c - Medical Subject Headings

Code c indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to *Medical Subject Headings* (MeSH), which is maintained by the National Library of Medicine. (Code c is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the heading is appropriate for use in MeSH.)

008/11 c
150 þ0#aHospitals, General

008/11 c
008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]
008/15 a [code indicating heading may be used as a subject added entry]
110 20#aPan American Health Organization

008/11 c
008/09 d [subdivision record]
150 þ0#pharmacodynamics

008/11 c
008/09 e [node label record]
150 þ0#abiographies by subject

d - National Agricultural Library subject authority file

Code d indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to the National Agricultural Library subject authority file. (Code d is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the heading is appropriate for National Agricultural Library subject heading purposes.)

008/11 d

150 \$0#aCosmochemistry

008/11 d

008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]

008/15 a [code indicating heading may be used as a subject added entry]
110 20#aFarm Credit System (U.S.)**k - Canadian Subject Headings**

Code k indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to *Canadian Subject Headings*, which is maintained by the National Library of Canada. (Code k is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the heading is appropriate for use in *Canadian Subject Headings*.)

008/11 k

150 \$0#aPostage stamps#zCanada

008/11 k

008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]

008/15 a [code indicating heading may be used as a subject added entry]
110 20#aEskimo Point Residents Association**r - Art and Architecture Thesaurus**

Code r indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to the *Art and Architecture Thesaurus*, which is maintained by the Art and Architecture Thesaurus Program. (Code r is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the 1XX heading is appropriate for use in the *Art and Architecture Thesaurus*.)

v - Répertoire des vedettes-matière

Code v indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to the *Répertoire des vedettes-matière*, which is maintained by the Bibliothèque de l'Université Laval. (Code v is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the heading is appropriate for use in *Répertoire des vedettes-matière*.)

008/11 v

150 \$0#aHumour canadien par l'image

008/11 v

008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]

008/15 a [code indicating heading may be used as a subject added entry]
130 \$0#aSérie d'études de la réglementation gouvernementales**z - Other**

Code z indicates that the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to subject heading system/thesaurus conventions other than that specified by one of the other defined codes. A USMARC code for the conventions used to formulate the heading may be contained in subfield *+f* (Subject heading/thesaurus conventions) in field 040 (Cataloging Source).

008/11

n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the 1XX heading does not conform to subject heading system/thesaurus conventions. The heading is not appropriate for use as a subject added entry in bibliographic records (008/15, code b).

008/11 n

008/09 a [established heading record]

008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]

008/15 b [code indicating heading may not be used as a subject added entry]

008/39 y [code indicating Library of Congress cataloging]

151 \$0#aCeylon

[In the Library of Congress authority file, Sri Lanka is the only term used for subject added entries; Ceylon may still be appropriate for main or added entries.]

008/11 n

008/09 c [reference record (traced reference)]

008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]

008/15 b [code indicating heading may not be used as a subject added entry]

100 10#aReger, Max, #d1873-1916.#tDies irae

664 y\$y#aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under #bReger, Max, 1873-1916.#tRequiem (Mass)

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules

008/12 Type of series

M

Codes

a	Monographic series	A
b	Multipart item	A
c	Series-like phrase	A
z	Other	A
n	Not applicable	A

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character alphabetic code indicates the type of series contained in the 1XX heading field in an established heading record (008/09, code a). The record may also contain series treatment information in fields 640-646. The codes distinguish between monographic series and multipart items and identify special instances of series treatment. Code a, b, c, or z is used if the 1XX heading is appropriate for use as a series added entry (008/16, code a), regardless of whether the series is actually traced in bibliographic records.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

a - Monographic series

Code a indicates that the 1XX field contains a collective series heading that applies to a group of separate publications and/or subseries.

008/12 a

008/16 a [code indicating heading may be used as a series added entry]

130 \$0#aBulletin (International Institute for Land Reclamation and Improvement)

b - Multipart item

Code b indicates that the 1XX field contains a collective heading that applies to a multipart monographic publication.

008/12 b

008/16 a [code indicating heading may be used as a series added entry]

100 10#aGreaves, Margaret.#tLittle box of ballet stories

008/12

c - Series-like phrase

| Code c indicates that the 1XX heading is a series-like phrase that may or may not be
| used as a series added entry. This type of series is coded as being appropriate for use
| as a series added entry in bibliographic records (008/16, code a).

008/12 c

008/16 a [code indicating heading may be used as a series added entry]

130 \$0#aDawn books

n - Not applicable

| Code n indicates that the 1XX heading does not represent a series or a series-like
| phrase. The heading is not appropriate for use as a series added entry in bibliographic
| records (008/16, code b).

008/12 n

008/16 b [code indicating heading may not be used as a series added entry]

130 \$0#aDead Sea scrolls

008/12 n

008/16 b [code indicating heading may not be used as a series added entry]

100 10#aShore, Kenneth

z - Other

| Code z indicates that the 1XX field contains a heading for a publication that does not
| fit any of the other defined types of series but for which series-type treatment is re-
| quired, e.g., a serial in which an occasional issue is analyzed.

008/12 z

008/16 a [code indicating heading may be used as a series added entry]

130 \$0#aChinese studies in history

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/16 Heading use—series added entry

008/13 Numbered/unnumbered series

M

Codes

a	Numbered series	A
b	Unnumbered series	A
c	Series numbering varies	A
n	Not applicable	A

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether a 1XX heading for a series (or a series-like phrase) in an established heading record (008/09, code a) is numbered, unnumbered, or varies between being numbered and unnumbered.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ CODES****a - Numbered series**

| Code a indicates that the series (or series-like phrase) is numbered. If the heading is traced as a series added entry in bibliographic records for individual items in the series (008/16, code a), field 642 (Series Numbering Example) contains the form of series numbering to be used in an added entry.

008/13 a
 008/16 a [code indicating heading may be used as a series added entry]
 130 \$0#&aStructure and properties of cell membranes
 642 \$0#&av. 1#5DLC

b - Unnumbered series

| Code b indicates that the series (or series-like phrase) is unnumbered.

008/13 b
 130 \$0#&aEPO dossier international

008/13

c - Series numbering varies

Code c indicates that some issues of the series (or series-like phrase) are numbered; others, published concurrently, are unnumbered. If the heading is traced as a series added entry in bibliographic records for the numbered items (008/16, code a), field 642 (Series Numbering Example) contains the form of series numbering to be used in an added entry.

008/13 c

008/16 a [code indicating heading may be used as a series added entry]

130 \$0+aActualités de biochimie marine

642 \$0+\$av. 5+5DLC

n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the 1XX heading is not a series or series-like phrase heading (008/12, code n; 008/16, code b).

008/13 n

100 10+aKimura, Toshihiro

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/12 Type of series

008/16 Heading use—series added entry

642 Series Numbering Example

008/14 Heading use code—main or added entry*M*Codes

- | | | |
|---|---|----------|
| a | Heading is appropriate for use as main or added entry | <i>A</i> |
| b | Heading is not appropriate for use as main or added entry | |
-

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether the 1XX heading is appropriate for use as a main (1XX field) or added entry (7XX field) in bibliographic records. An *appropriate heading* is a 1XX heading in an established heading record (008/09, Type of record, code a or f) that conforms to descriptive cataloging rules (008/10, any code except n). An *inappropriate heading* would be any unestablished 1XX heading or any heading that does not conform to descriptive cataloging rules (008/10, code n).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ CODES****a - Heading is appropriate for use as main or added entry**

Code a indicates that the 1XX field in an established heading record contains a name, name/title, or uniform title that conforms to descriptive cataloging rules. The heading is appropriate for use as a main or added entry in bibliographic records.

008/14 a

100 10#*a*Smith, Arthur D.#q(Arthur Dwight),#d1907-

008/14 a

110 20#*a*Annenberg School of Communications (University of Pennsylvania)

008/14 a

111 20#*a*Conference on the Quantitative Measures of China's Economic
Output#d(1975 :#cBrookings Institution)

008/14 a

130 #0#*a*Serie Cuaderno de docencia

008/14 a

151 #0#*a*Buenos Aires (Argentina : Province)

008/14

b - Heading is not appropriate for use as main or added entry

Code b indicates that the 1XX field in an established heading record contains a heading that does not conform to descriptive cataloging rules or that the 1XX field contains an unestablished heading in a reference, subdivision, or node label record. These headings are not appropriate for use as a main or added entry in bibliographic records.

008/14 b

008/09 a [established heading record]

008/10 n [code indicating heading not established using descriptive cataloging rules]

150 \$0#*a*Super Bowl Game (Football)

008/14 b

008/09 a [established heading record]

008/10 n [code indicating heading not established using descriptive cataloging rules]

150 \$0#*a*Beds in literature

008/14 b

008/09 a [established heading record]

008/10 n [code indicating heading not established using descriptive cataloging rules]

151 \$0#*a*Loire River Valley (France)

008/14 b

008/09 a [established heading record]

008/10 n [code indicating heading not established using descriptive cataloging rules]

151 \$0#*a*China#*x*History#*y*May Thirtieth Movement, 1925

008/14 b

008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]

150 \$0#*a*Badges of honor

260 \$0#*f*isubdivision#*a*Medals, badges, decorations, etc.#*i*under armies, navies, etc., e.g.#*a*United States. Navy—Medals, badges, decorations, etc.

008/14 b

008/09 c [reference record (traced reference)]

100 10#*a*Reger, Max,#*d*1873-1916.#*t*Dies irae

664 \$0#*a*For this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under#*b*Reger, Max, 1873-1916.#*t*Requiem (Mass)

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules

008/15 Heading use code—subject added entry

M

Codes

- a Heading is appropriate for use as subject added entry
 b Heading is not appropriate for use as subject added entry

A
A

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether the 1XX heading is appropriate for use as a subject added entry (6XX field) in bibliographic records. An *appropriate heading* is a 1XX heading in an established heading record (008/09, Type of record, code a or f) that conforms to subject heading system/thesaurus rules (008/11, any code except n). An *inappropriate heading* would be any unestablished 1XX heading or any established heading that does not conform to subject heading system/thesaurus rules (008/11, code n).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

a - Heading is appropriate for use as subject added entry

Code a indicates that the 1XX field in an established heading record contains a subject name or term that conforms to subject heading system/thesaurus rules. The heading is appropriate for use as a subject added entry in bibliographic records.

008/15 a
 008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]
 150 \$0+aSuper Bowl Game (Football)

008/15 a
 008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]
 150 \$0+aBeds in literature

008/15 a
 008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]
 151 \$0+aLoire River Valley (France)

008/15 a
 008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]
 008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]
 151 \$0+aFrance

008/15 a
 008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]
 151 \$0+aChina+xHistory+yMay Thirtieth Movement, 1925

008/15

b - Heading is not appropriate for use as subject added entry

Code b indicates that the 1XX field in an established heading record contains a heading that does not conform to subject heading system/thesaurus rules or that the 1XX field contains an unestablished heading in a reference, subdivision, or node label record. These headings are not appropriate for use as subject added entries in bibliographic records.

008/15 b

008/09 a [established heading record]

008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]

008/39 \$ [code indicating Library of Congress cataloging]

151 \$0+aCeylon

[In the Library of Congress authority file, Sri Lanka is the only term used for subject added entries; Ceylon may still be appropriate for main or added entries.]

008/15 b

008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]

150 \$0+aBadges of honor

260 \$þ+subdivision+\$aMedals, badges, decorations, etc.+\$iunder armies, navies, etc., e.g.+\$aUnited States. Navy—Medals, badges, decorations, etc.

008/15 b

008/09 c [reference record (traced reference)]

008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]

100 10+\$aReger, Max,\$#d1873-1916.\$tDies irae

664 \$þ+\$aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under+\$bReger, Max, 1873-1916.\$tRequiem (Mass)

008/15 b

008/09 d [subdivision record]

008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]

150 \$0+\$ablood supply

008/15 b

008/09 e [node label record]

008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]

150 \$0+\$acommercial catalogs by function

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules

008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus

008/16 Heading use code—series added entry

M

Codes

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| a | Heading is appropriate for use as series added entry | A |
| b | Heading is not appropriate for use as series added entry | A |
-

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether the 1XX heading is appropriate for use as a series added entry in bibliographic records (4XX Series Statements (Traced); 8XX Series Added Entry). An *appropriate heading* is a 1XX heading in an established heading record (008/09, Type of record, code a) that represents a monographic series, a multipart item, an occasionally analyzable item, or a series-like phrase (008/12, code a, b, z, or c). An *inappropriate heading* would be any unestablished 1XX heading or any established heading that does not represent a series heading (008/12, code n).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

a - Heading is appropriate for use as series added entry

Code a indicates that the 1XX field in an established heading record contains a series heading. The heading is appropriate for use as a series added entry, regardless of whether the series is actually traced in bibliographic records.

008/16 a

008/12 a [code indicating a monographic series]

130 \$0#aOccasional papers (University of Witwatersrand)

008/16 a

008/12 b [code indicating a multipart item]

110 20#aAerospace Center (U.S.)†tJPC

008/16 a

008/12 z [code indicating an occasionally analyzable item]

130 \$0#aSIGOA newsletter

008/16 a

008/12 c [code indicating a series-like phrase]

130 \$0#aDahood memorial lecture

008/16

b - Heading is not appropriate for use as series added entry

Code b indicates that the 1XX field in an established heading record contains a heading that is not a series heading (008/12, code n) or that the 1XX field contains an unestablished heading in a reference, subdivision, or node label record. These headings are not appropriate for use as a series added entry in bibliographic records.

008/16 b
130 \$0#aTreaty of Utrecht#d(1713)

008/16 b
100 10#aIves, Charles,#d1874-1954.#tSet of 3 short pieces.#pScherzo

008/16 b
008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]
150 \$0#aSeries, Arithmetic

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data: 4XX (Series Statement) and 8XX (Series Added Entry) fields

008/17 Type of subject subdivision code

o

Codes

a	Topical	o
b	Form	o
c	Chronological	o
d	Geographic	o
e	Language	o
n	Not applicable	o

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character code identifies the type of subject subdivision contained in the 1XX heading field in a subdivision record, an established heading and subdivision record, or a reference and subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code d, f, or g). Code n is used in all other kinds of records.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

a - Topical

Code a indicates that the 1XX heading is a topical subject subdivision.

008/17 a
 008/09 d [subdivision record]
 150 þ0+aadverse effects

008/17 a
 008/09 f [established heading and subdivision record]
 150 þ0+aFuture
 360 þþ+subdivision+aFuture+under specific subject terms

b - Form

Code b indicates that the 1XX heading is a form subject subdivision.

008/17 b
 008/09 d [subdivision record]
 150 þ0+acongresses

008/17

008/17 b
008/09 g [reference and subdivision record]
150 þ0#*a*Dictionaries
260 þþ#*i*subdivision#*a*Dictionaries#*i*under specific subject terms

c - Chronological

Code c indicates that the 1XX heading is a chronological subject subdivision.

008/17 c
008/09 d [subdivision record]
150 þ0#*a*20th century

d - Geographic

Code d indicates that the 1XX heading is a geographic subject subdivision.

008/17 d
008/09 d [subdivision record]
151 þ0#*a*Ontario

008/17 d
008/09 f [established heading and subdivision record]
151 þ0#*a*Great Lakes
680 þþ#*a*This term is to be used only as a geographic descriptor and may
not be subdivided. It may, however, be used to subdivide topical
indexing terms.

e - Language

Code e indicates that the 1XX heading is a language subject subdivision.

008/17 e
008/09 d [subdivision record]
150 þ0#*a*German

n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the 1XX heading is not a subject subdivision.

008/17 n
008/09 a [established heading record]
þ0#*a*Electroplating

008/17 n

008/09 a [established heading record]

110 10#aQueensland.#bDept. of Employment and Labour Relations

| CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

þ *Value used in records before the definition of this character position [OBSOLETE]*

The *type of subject subdivision* was not specified prior to the definition of this character position in 1986. Records created prior to that time may contain a blank (þ) meaning *undefined* in this position.

| 008/18-27 Undefined character positions

O

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

| These ten character positions are undefined; each may contain a blank (B) or a fill character (I).

| 008/28 Type of government agency

O

Codes

ø	Not a government agency	O
i	International intergovernmental	O
f	Federal/national	O
a	Autonomous or semi-autonomous component of the Soviet Union, Yugoslavia, or Malaysia	O
s	State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.	O
m	Multistate	O
c	Multilocal	O
l	Local	O
z	Other type of government agency	O
o	Government agency—type undetermined	O
u	Unknown if heading is government agency	O

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character code indicates the jurisdictional level of the 1XX heading in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The heading may be either a jurisdiction or a body created or controlled by an international, national, state, or local government (including intergovernmental bodies of all types) jurisdiction.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

ø - Not a government agency

Code ø indicates that the 1XX heading is not a government body.

008/28 ø
110 20+aInternational Comparative Literatur

008/28 ø
130 ø0+aBible

008/28

| **a - Autonomous or semi-autonomous component of the Soviet Union, Yugoslavia, or Malaysia**
Code a indicates that the IXX heading is, or is authorized by, an autonomous or semi-autonomous component of the Soviet Union, Yugoslavia, or Malaysia.

008/28 a
151 20#aSabah

c - Multilocal

Code c indicates that the IXX heading is a government body that is authorized by a regional combination of jurisdictions below the state level.

008/28 c
110 20#aHouston Independent School District

f - Federal/national

Code f indicates that the IXX heading is, or is authorized by, a federal or national government.

008/28 f
110 20#aNational Agricultural Library

i - International intergovernmental

Code i indicates that the IXX heading is an international intergovernmental body.

008/28 i
110 20#aUnited Nations.#bSecretary-General

l - Local

Code l indicates that the IXX heading is, or is authorized by, a county, city, town, etc., government.

008/28 l
151 20#aMexico City (Mexico)

m - Multistate

Code m indicates that the IXX heading is a government body that is authorized by a regional combination of jurisdictions at the state, provincial, territorial, etc., level.

008/28 m
110 20#aCouncil of State Governments

rnment agency—type undetermined

e o indicates that the jurisdictional level of the IXX heading cannot be determined.

s - State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.

Code s indicates that the 1XX heading is, or is authorized by, a state, province, territory, etc., government.

008/28 s

110 10#*a*Virginia.*#b*Governor

u - Unknown if heading is government agency

Code u indicates that it cannot be determined whether the 1XX heading is a government agency.

008/28 u

110 20#*a*Afghan Cartographic & Cadastral Survey Institute

| **z - Other type of government agency**

Code z indicates that the 1XX heading is a government agency that is authorized by a level other than that specified by one of the other defined codes.

008/28 z

110 20#*a*Patoka Lake Regional Planning Commission

008/29 Reference evaluation

M

Codes

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| a | Tracings are consistent with the heading | A |
| b | Tracings are not necessarily consistent with the heading | A |
| n | Not applicable | A |
-

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character code indicates whether the 4XX/5XX tracing fields in a record have been evaluated for consistency with the rules used to formulate the 1XX heading in the record. This information is used to identify heading/tracing inconsistencies when a major change in the rules used to formulate headings and references has not been fully implemented. For example, in advance of implementing new rules, an organization may begin to add to its authority records a 4XX tracing reflecting the 1XX heading according to the new rules. When the rules are implemented, the 1XX headings in the database may be converted to the new rule form by flipping the pertinent 4XX field and the 1XX field. The tracing fields in the record then must be evaluated for their consistency with the new 1XX heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ CODES****a - Tracings are consistent with the heading**

Code a indicates that the 4XX/5XX tracing fields in a record have been evaluated and are consistent with the rules used to formulate the 1XX heading in that record.

008/29 a

008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]
 110 10#aMauritius.+bMinistry for Employment
 410 10#aMauritius.+bMinistère de l'emploi
 410 10#aMauritius.+bEmployment, Ministry for

008/29 a

008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]
 130 10#aEconomic and statistical notes
 410 10#aGreat Britain.+bDept. of the Environment.+tEconomic and statistical
 notes

008/29

008/29 a
008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]
150 \$0+aActing for television
450 \$0+aTelevision acting
550 \$0+aActing

b - Tracings are not necessarily consistent with the heading

Code b indicates that the 4XX/5XX tracing fields in a record have not been evaluated and may not be consistent with the rules used to formulate the 1XX heading in that record. *Code b is not used in current authority records.*

008/29 b
008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]
110 20+aTucson Metropolitan Chamber of Commerce
410 10+aTucson, Ariz.+bMetropolitan Chamber of Commerce
510 10+wa+aTucson, Ariz.+bChamber of Commerce

n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the record contains no 4XX/5XX tracing fields.

008/29 n
008/10 c [code indicating AACR 2]
100 10+aAhlborn, Richard E.

008/29 n
008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]
150 \$0+aBa (Egyptian religion)

| **CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY**

\$ Value used in records before the definition of this byte [OBSOLETE]

This code was made obsolete in 1987. Reference evaluation was not specified prior to the definition of this character position in 1980. Records created prior to that time may contain a blank \$ meaning *undefined* in this position.

008/30 Undefined character position

O

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This character position is undefined; it may contain a blank (Ø) or a fill character (I).

008/31 Record update in process

M

Codes

- a Record can be used
b Record is being updated

A
A

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether a change in any field in a record is being considered. Code b alerts users to a potential change in the record and that it may not be advisable to use the 1XX heading in bibliographic records. The organization investigating the modification may be identified by the NUC symbol contained in the last subfield \$d of field 040 (Cataloging Source).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

a - Record can be used

Code a indicates that no change in the record is being considered and that the data may be used.

b - Record is being updated

Code b indicates that a change in the record is being considered.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

040 Cataloging Source

008/32 Undifferentiated personal name

M

Codes

a	Differentiated personal name	A
b	Undifferentiated personal name	A
n	Not applicable	A

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether a personal name contained in field 100 in an established heading record or a reference record (008/09, Kind of record, code a or c) is used by one person or by two or more persons. Code n is used if the 1XX heading is not a personal name or if the personal name is a family name (100, first indicator value 3).

If neither dates nor distinguishing terms are available to differentiate between two or more identical names, the same heading is used for all persons with the same name. In a single authority record, field 670 (Source Data Found) may contain a descriptive term for each person consisting of the title of the work cataloged and the person's relationship to it, e.g., [Author of Speciall newes from Ireland].

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

a - Differentiated personal name

Code a indicates that the personal name in field 100 is a unique name.

008/32 a
100 10#aDring, Madeleine

008/32 a
100 10#aCzerny, Carl,#d1791-1857.#tRicordanza

008/32 a
008/09 c [reference record (untraced reference)]
100 10#aReger, Max,#d1873-1916.#tDies irae
664 #p#aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem
search under#bReger, Max, 1873-1916.#tRequiem (Mass)

008/32

b - Undifferentiated personal name

Code b indicates that the personal name in field 100 is used by two or more persons.
No distinguishing information is available.

008/32 b

100 00#*a*Divine of the Church of England
670 00#*a*[Author of A modest examination of the new oath of allegiance]
670 00#*a*His A modest examination of the new oath of allegiance, 1689:#bt.p.
(divine of the Church of England)
670 00#*a*[Author of Reasons against petitioning the King for restoring the deprived
bishops without repentance]
670 00#*a*Author's Reasons against petitioning the King for restoring the deprived
bishops without repentance, 1690:#bcaption t.p. (divine of the Church of
England)

n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the 1XX heading is not a personal name or that the personal
name is a family name.

008/32 n

100 30#*a*Guelf, House of

008/32 n

110 20#*a*University of Denver

008/32 n

130 00#*a*Occasional papers of the Prince of Wales Northern Heritage Centre

008/32 n

150 00#*a*Ballet dancing

008/32 n

151 00#*a*Paris (France)

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

670 Source Data Found

008/33 Level of establishment code

M

Codes

a	Fully established heading	A
b	Memorandum	A
c	Provisional	A
d	Preliminary	A
n	Not applicable	A

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character alphabetic code indicates the extent to which the formulation of the 1XX heading conforms to the descriptive cataloging and/or subject heading system/thesaurus rules coded in 008/10 and 008/11. Codes a, b, c and d are used only in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f). Code n is used in all other kinds of records.

The codes defined for 008/33 apply only to the 1XX heading field. The completeness of the entire authority record is indicated in Leader/17 (Encoding level).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

a - Fully established heading

Code a indicates that the 1XX heading is fully established. The heading may be used without reservation in a bibliographic record.

008/33 a
100 10#aSwarts, Robert L.,#d1942-

008/33 a
150 \$0#aElectrons

008/33

b - Memorandum

Code b indicates that the 1XX heading is fully established but that it has not been used in a bibliographic record. The authority work was done before the decision was made to not use the heading in a bibliographic record; however, the information is retained for probable future use. When the heading is used in a bibliographic record, code b will be changed to code a or c.

008/33 b

100 10#*a*Wellington, John,#d1958-
670 ##*a*Microform review ten volume index, 1972-1981, c1982:#bCIP t.p.
(John Wellington) data sheet (b. 9/10/58)

c - Provisional

Code c indicates that the 1XX heading cannot be formulated satisfactorily because of inadequate information. Further investigation should be made when the heading is next used in a bibliographic record. When the needed information is available, code c will be changed to code a.

008/33 c

110 20#*a*Fédération internationale de la précontrainte.#bWorking Group on
Concrete Ships
[The French form of the subordinate unit could not be found.]

d - Preliminary

Code d indicates that the 1XX heading is taken from a bibliographic record because the bibliographic item is not available at the time the heading is established. For example, authority records may be created for the 1XX headings in bibliographic records that are being converted retrospectively to machine-readable form. When the heading is used in a bibliographic record created from cataloging with an item in hand, code d will be changed to code a.

008/33 d

100 10#*a*Armstrong, William Herbert
670 ##*a*LCCN 56-1255: His Machine tools for metal cutting, 1957#b(hdg.:
Armstrong, William Herbert)

n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the 1XX field contains an unestablished heading in a reference, subdivision, reference and subdivision, or node label record.

008/33 n

008/09 c *[reference record (untraced reference)]*
150 #0#*a*Celebrations, anniversaries, etc.
260 ##*a*Anniversaries, etc.#iunder names of individual persons and corporate bodies, under individual historic events, and under names countries, cities, etc.; and subdivision#*a*Centennial celebrations, etc.#iunder names of individual corporate bodies, under historic events, and under names of countries, cities, etc.

008/33 n

008/09 c [reference record (traced reference)]

100 10#aReger, Max,#d1873-1916.#tDies irae

664 ¶¶#aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem
search under+bReger, Max, 1873-1916.#tRequiem (Mass)

008/33 n

008/09 d [subdivision record]

150 ¶0#aadverse effects

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules

008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus

008/34-37 Undefined character positions

O

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

These four character positions are undefined; each may contain a blank (Ø) or a fill character (|).

| **CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY**

Prior to 1986, character positions 35-37 were defined as *Language of heading code*.

008/38 Modified record

o

Codes

ø	Not modified	o
s	Shortened	o
x	Missing characters	o

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character code indicates whether the record is modified from its intended content because it required characters that could not be converted into machine-readable form (e.g., nonroman characters) or because it exceeded a system-imposed maximum allowable length.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

ø - Not modified

Code ø indicates that the content of the record required no modification in order to be transcribed into machine-readable form.

s - Shortened

Code s indicates that all of the data intended for the record is not included in the machine-readable record because the record would exceed the maximum length allowed by a particular system. The *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes* states that USMARC records have a maximum length of 99,999 characters. Code s is not used in current authority records.

x - Missing characters

Code x indicates that the intended content could not be converted into machine-readable symbols, etc. Organizations now use special symbols by a word or phrase. Code

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

USMARC Specifications for Record Structure

008/39 Cataloging source code

M

Codes

b	Library of Congress	A
a	National Agricultural Library	A
b	National Library of Medicine	A
c	Library of Congress cooperative cataloging program	A
d	Other sources	A
u	Unknown	A

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A one-character code indicates the creator of an authority record. If the cataloging source is known, the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization creating the record is carried in subfield *#a* of field 040 (Cataloging Source). The parties responsible for the USMARC authority record are determined by the code in 008/39 and the NUC symbol(s) in field 040.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ CODES

b - Library of Congress

Code b indicates that the Library of Congress is the creator of the original authority data.

008/39 b

040 b#aDLC#cDLC

[The Library of Congress is also responsible for the content designation and transcription.]

a - National Agricultural Library

Code a indicates that the National Agricultural Library is the creator of the original authority data.

008/39 a

040 b#aDNAL#cDNAL

[The National Agricultural Library is also responsible for the content designation and transcription.]

b - National Library of Medicine

Code b indicates that the National Library of Medicine is the creator of the original authority data.

008/39 b

040 \$y+aDNLM+cDLC

[*The Library of Congress is responsible for the content designation and transcription.*]

c - Library of Congress cooperative cataloging program

Code c indicates that the creator of the authority data is a participant (other than the National Agricultural Library and the National Library of Medicine) in a cooperative cataloging program with the Library of Congress, such as the National Coordinated Cataloging Operations program (NACO), the Linked Systems Project (LSP), and the LC Online Cooperative Program.

008/39 c

040 \$y+aMt+cDLC

[*NACO record created by the Montana State Library; the Library of Congress is responsible for the content designation and transcription.*]

008/39 c

040 \$y+aOU+cOU

[*Record created, content designated, and transcribed by LSP participant Ohio State University.*]

008/39 c

040 \$y+aICU+cICU

[*Record created, content designated, and transcribed by LC Online Cooperative Program participant University of Chicago.*]

d - Other sources

Code d indicates that the source of the authority data is an organization that is other than an LC cooperating cataloging program participant or one for which a specific code is defined.

008/39 d

040 \$y+aWyU+cWyU

[*Record created, content designated, and transcribed by the University of Wyoming.*]

u - Unknown

Code u indicates that the creator of the authority data is unknown. This code is used when an organization transcribes a manual authority record from an unknown source. In this case, field 040 lacks a subfield \$a and subfield \$c contains the NUC symbol of the transcribing organization.

008/39 u

040 \$0\$cOrU

[The University of Oregon is responsible for the content designation and transcription.]

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

040 Cataloging Source

01X-09X Numbers and Codes—General Information

*National Level
Requirement*

010	Library of Congress Control Number (NR)	A
014	Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item (R)	O
020	International Standard Book Number (R)	A
022	International Standard Serial Number (R)	A
035	System Control Number (R)	O
040	Cataloging Source (NR)	M
042	Authentication Code (NR)	O
043	Geographic Area Code (NR)	O
045	Time Period of Heading (NR)	O
050	Library of Congress Call Number (R)	O
052	Geographic Classification Code (R)	O
053	LC Classification Number (R)	O
060	National Library of Medicine Call Number (R)	O
066	Character Sets Present (NR)	A
070	National Agricultural Library Call Number (R)	O
072	Subject Category Code (R)	O
073	Subdivision Usage (NR)	O
082	Dewey Decimal Call Number (NR)	O
083	Dewey Decimal Classification Number (R)	O
09X	Local Call Numbers (NR)	O

DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Fields 01X-09X contain standard numbers, classification numbers, codes, and other data elements relating to the record.

Alternate Graphic Representation

Subfield #6 (Linkage) is defined for the following 01X-09X fields:

014	Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item
020	International Standard Book Number
022	International Standard Serial Number
035	System Control Number
050	Library of Congress Call Number
060	National Library of Medicine Call Number
070	National Agricultural Library Call Number
072	Subject Category Code
073	Subdivision Usage
082	Dewey Decimal Call Number
083	Dewey Decimal Classification Number

The description of subfield #6 contained in field 014 applies to each of these fields. It will be added to the other field descriptions when they are reissued for other changes.

010

*National Level
Requirement*

10 Library of Congress Control Number (NR)

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
þ	Undefined	<i>M</i>
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
þ	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#a	LC control number (NR)	<i>O</i>
#z	Cancelled/invalid LC control number (R)	<i>M</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a unique number assigned to a record by the Library of Congress or a Linked Systems Project (LSP) partner contributing authority records to the National Coordinated Cataloging Operations (NACO) database.

The LC control number is carried in field 001 (Control Number) in records distributed by LC's Cataloging Distribution Service. It may also be carried in field 010#a. An organization using LC records may move the LC control number from field 001 to field 010 and use field 001 for its own control number.

An LC record may contain field 010 with a cancelled or invalid control number of a previously-distributed record. A record may be cancelled because it is a duplicate, i.e., it represents the same name, series, or subject heading represented by another record. The structure of the cancelled/invalid control number is the same as that used by LC in field 001. Field 010 may or may not contain a subfield #a with the valid control number from the 001 field.

STRUCTURE OF THE LC CONTROL NUMBER

The LC control number for authority records has the same 12-character-position structure as the LC control number for bibliographic and holdings data records:

- three character positions for an alphabetic prefix
- eight character positions for an eight-digit number composed of a two-digit prefix representing the year the number was assigned and a six-digit serial number
- a final character position reserved for supplement number information

*010 - p. I
June 1987*

010

Alphabetic prefix

Prefices are carried in a USMARC record as lowercase alphabetic characters. Prefixes of less than three characters are left justified with blank (ø) fill. LC authority records are differentiated from LC bibliographic and holdings data records by the control number prefix.

Records distributed in the MARC Distribution Service—Name Authorities (i.e., names and series) have the prefix nøø for records keyed by LC. Prefixes nrø, nwø, and noø identify records from the Research Libraries Information Network (RLIN), the Western Library Network (WLN), and the Online Computer Library Center (OCLC), respectively, that originate in those systems by NACO participants and are sent to LC over the LSP links.

Records distributed in the MARC Distribution Service—Subject Authorities have the prefix shø.

Year

The year portion of the control number consists of two digits representing the year the control number was assigned. In name authority records that were converted retrospectively by an agency under contract to LC, the digits 50 were used for the year for name authority records, and the digits 42 were used for series authority records. In subject authority records that were converted retrospectively from an LC internal format to USMARC, the digits 85 were used in lieu of the actual year of creation.

Serial number

The serial number portion consists of one to six digits. Serial numbers of less than six digits are right justified with zero fill. The hyphen separating the year and the serial number in LC printed products is not carried in the machine record. For example, the serial number in the number 85-2 is carried as 8500002 in the USMARC record.

Supplement number

This character position was originally defined to carry a supplement number for dashed-on supplement entries in bibliographic records. Use of the supplement number has not been implemented. LC uses a blank (ø) in this position.

■ EXAMPLES

001 nøø85822720ø
010 øø+znøø78013283ø+znøø85822720ø

001 nøø80022124ø
010 øø+anøø80022124ø+znøø80014241ø

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Field 010 is an agency-assigned field; it may be used only for an LC control number.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

001 Control Number

014 Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined
↳	Undefined

M
M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined
↳	Undefined

M
M

Subfield Code

‡a	Control number of related bibliographic record (NR)
‡6	Linkage (NR)

M
A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the control number copied from field 001 of a USMARC bibliographic record for a serial or a multipart item that is cataloged as a set. The inclusion of this field in the established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a) provides a machine link within a system between the series heading and a bibliographic record in which the series heading is used. Each bibliographic record control number associated with the series heading is contained in a separate 014 field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODE

‡a - Control number of related bibliographic record

Subfield ‡a contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol (enclosed in parentheses) of the organization that created the related bibliographic record (040, Cataloging Source, subfield ‡a) followed by the control number from field 001 of the bibliographic record. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

Bibliographic record:

001 \$BB\$85032313\$
 245 00#*a*Human genes and diseases /#cvolume editor, F. Blasi.
 440 \$0#*a*Horizons in biochemistry and biophysics ;#vv. 8
 040 \$0#*a*DNLM/DLC\$cDLC
*[Certain LC cooperative cataloging programs require the use of composite NUC symbols in field 040#*a*.]*

Authority record:

001 n\$B\$84704742\$
 014 \$0#*a*(DNLM/DLC)\$BB\$85032313\$
 130 \$0#*a*Horizons in biochemistry and biophysics

| #6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 contains data that link fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the 880 *Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

INPUT CONVENTIONS**Punctuation**

A slash (/) occurs between the components of the composite NUC symbols used by the Library of Congress in certain cooperative cataloging programs.

Structure

The structure of the control number is the same as that used by the originating organization in its control number field (001 Control Number; 010 Library of Congress Control Number). No space occurs between the parenthetical NUC symbol and the first character position of the control number.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

880 Alternate Graphic Representation
Symbols of American Libraries
USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data: 001 Control Number; 010 Library of Congress Control Number

020 International Standard Book Number (R)

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	
ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	
ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

	#a	International Standard Book Number (NR)	A
	+c	Terms of availability (NR)	O
	+z	Cancelled/invalid ISBN (R)	A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the International Standard Book Number (ISBN), the terms of availability, and any cancelled/invalid ISBN copied from field 020 of a USMARC bibliographic record for a multipart item that is cataloged as a set. The inclusion of this field in the established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record code, code a) provides a machine link within a system between the series heading and a bibliographic record in which the series heading is used. Each valid ISBN associated with the series heading is contained in a separate 020 field.

The ISBN is an agency-assigned data element. ISBNs are assigned to monographic publications by designated agencies in each country participating in the program. An ISBN consists of ten digits comprising four groups separated by hyphens. (The tenth digit is a check digit used as a computer validity check; it consists of a number between 0 and 9 or an uppercase X (for the arabic numeral 10).) Procedures for validation of the ISBN by calculating the check digit and hyphenating instructions are in *Book Numbering (ANSI Z39.21)*. A description of the ISBN structure and guidelines for recording qualifying information are found in *Cataloging Service Bulletin*, no. 16 (Spring 1982), published by the Library of Congress.

An International Standard Serial Number (ISSN) associated with a series heading for a serial is contained in field 022 (International Standard Serial Number).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicators are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

020

■ SUBFIELD CODES

| **#a - International Standard Book Number**

Subfield #a contains a valid ISBN for the multipart item. Parenthetical qualifying information, such as the publisher/distributor, binding/format, and volume numbers, is not separately subfield coded.

020 \$0#a0882335073 (set)
020 \$0#a0882335065 (v. 2 : jacket)

| **+c - Terms of availability**

Subfield +c contains the price or a brief statement of availability and any parenthetical qualifying information concerning the terms. When field 020 in the corresponding bibliographic record contains only a subfield +c, field 020 is not included in the series authority record.

020 \$0#a8449955289 (v. 1)+c\$15.00 (per vol.)

| **#z - Cancelled/invalid ISBN**

Subfield #z contains a cancelled or invalid ISBN and any parenthetical qualifying information. Each cancelled/invalid ISBN is contained in a separate subfield #z.

020 \$0#a0870686933 (v. 1 : alk. paper)+z0870684302 (jacket)

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Display Constants

ISBN	<i>[associated with the content of subfield #a]</i>
ISBN (invalid)	<i>[associated with the content of subfield #z]</i>
- - -	<i>[embedded hyphens]</i>

An ISBN is usually printed in a publication with the prefix *ISBN* and with each of its parts separated from the other by hyphens or spaces. The initialism *ISBN*, the phrase *ISBN (invalid)*, and the embedded hyphens are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the content of subfields #a and #z, respectively.

Content designated field:

020 \$0#a0870686933 (v. 1)+z0870684302

Display example:

ISBN 0-87068-693-3 (v. 1) ISBN (invalid) 0-87068-430-2

020

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

022 International Standard Serial Number

USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data: 020 International Standard Book Number

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

Book Numbering (ANSI Z39.21)

Cataloging Service Bulletin, no. 16 (Spring 1982)

022 International Standard Serial Number (R)

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
ø	Undefined	M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

	#a	International Standard Serial Number (NR)	A
	#y	Incorrect ISSN (R)	A
	#z	Cancelled ISSN (R)	A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the valid International Standard Serial Number (ISSN) and any incorrect and cancelled ISSNs copied from field 022 of a USMARC bibliographic record for a serial. The inclusion of this field in the established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a) provides a machine link within a system between the series heading and a bibliographic record in which the series heading is used. Each valid ISSN associated with the series heading is contained in a separate 022 field.

The ISSN is an agency-assigned data element. ISSNs are assigned to serial publications by national centers under the auspices of the International Serial Data System (ISDS). An ISSN consists of eight digits comprising two groups of four digits each, separated by a hyphen. (The eighth digit is a check digit used as a computer validity check; it consists of a number between 0 and 9 or an uppercase X (for the arabic numeral 10).) A description of the ISSN structure and the procedure for validation of the ISSN by calculating the check digit is in *International Standard Serial Numbering* (ANSI Z39.9).

An International Standard Book Number (ISBN) associated with a series heading for a multipart set is contained in field 020 (International Standard Book Number).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

022

■ SUBFIELD CODES

| **#a - International Standard Serial Number**

Subfield #a contains a valid ISSN for the serial.

022 0083-0674

#y - Incorrect ISSN

Subfield #y contains an incorrect ISSN that has been associated with the serial. Each incorrect ISSN is contained in a separate subfield #y. A cancelled ISSN is contained in subfield #z.

022 0046-225X#y0046-2254

#z - Cancelled ISSN

Subfield #z contains a cancelled ISSN that is associated with the serial. Each cancelled ISSN is contained in a separate subfield #z.

022 00410-7543#z0527-740X

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Display Constants

ISSN	[associated with the content of subfield #a]
ISSN (incorrect)	[associated with the content of subfield #y]
ISSN (cancelled)	[associated with the content of subfield #z]

| *is usually printed in a publication with the prefix ISSN and as two groups of four digits separated by a hyphen. The hyphen separating the two groups of digits is carried in the RC record. The initialism ISSN and the phrases ISSN (incorrect) and ISSN (cancelled) are not input. They may be system generated as display constants associated with subfields #a, #y, and #z, respectively.*

| *Display example:*

| ISSN 0046-225X ISSN (incorrect) 0046-2254

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

020 International Standard Book Number

USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data; 022 International Standard Serial Number

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

Serial Numbering (ISSN) (ANSI Z39.9)

035 System Control Number (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
		<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
		<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#a	System control number (NR)	<i>M</i>
#z	Cancelled/invalid system control number (R)	<i>A</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a system control number for a record that belongs to a system other than the one whose number is contained in field 001 (Control Number) or field 010 (Library of Congress Control Number). For interchange purposes, documentation of the structure and use of the system control number must be provided to exchange partners by the originating organization. Each valid system control number and any related cancelled/invalid control number are contained in a separate 035 field.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**#a - System control number**

Subfield #a contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol (enclosed in parentheses) of the organization originating the system control number, followed immediately by the number. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

035 ØØ#a(CaBVAU)2835210335

035

#z - Cancelled/invalid system control number

Subfield #z contains a cancelled/invalid system control number that is associated with the valid system control number contained in subfield #a.

035 \$y#a(OCOlc)1553114#z(OCOlc)153114

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Capitalization

The capitalization of the NUC symbol characters strictly follows that found in *Symbols of American Libraries*.

Structure

The structure of the system control number is determined by the documentation provided by the originating system. No space occurs between the parenthetical NUC symbol and the first character position of the control number.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

001 Control Number

010 Library of Congress Control Number

^THER RELATED DOCUMENT

Symbols of American Libraries

040 Cataloging Source (NR)*M*Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined
∅	Undefined

M
M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined
∅	Undefined

M
*M*Subfield Codes

#a	Original cataloging agency (NR)	<i>M</i>
#b	Language of cataloging (NR)	<i>O</i>
#c	Transcribing agency (NR)	<i>M</i>
#d	Modifying agency (R)	<i>A</i>
#f	Subject heading/thesaurus conventions (NR)	<i>A</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization(s) that created the original record, assigned USMARC content designation and transcribed the record into machine-readable form, or modified an existing USMARC record. The NUC symbols in field 040 and the code in 008/39 (Cataloging source) specify the responsible parties for the content, content designation, and transcription of an authority record. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

Field 040 may contain a USMARC code for the language of the textual information (i.e., nonheading data) contained in the record in note fields, subfield #i (Reference instruction phrase) of the 4XX and 5XX tracing fields, etc. It may also contain a USMARC code for the subject heading/thesaurus conventions used to formulate the heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (∅).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Original cataloging agency

Subfield #a contains the NUC symbol of the organization that created the original record.

008/39 \$ [code indicating Library of Congress]

040 \$#aDLC#cDLC

[The Library of Congress is responsible for the content, content designation, and transcription.]

#b - Language of cataloging

Subfield #b contains a USMARC code for the language used in the textual portions of the record. (The language code is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *USMARC Code List for Languages* and is the authoritative agency.)

#c - Transcribing agency

Subfield #c contains the NUC symbol of the organization that transcribed the record into machine-readable form.

008/39 c [code indicating LC cooperative program]

040 \$#aSD#cICU

[The South Dakota State Library is responsible for the content of the record; the University of Chicago is responsible for the content designation and transcription.]

008/39 c [code indicating LC cooperative program]

040 \$#aICU#cICU

[The University of Chicago is responsible for the content, content designation, and transcription.]

#d - Modifying agency

Subfield #d contains the NUC symbol of the organization responsible for modifying a USMARC record. A modification is defined as any correction to a record, including data, content designation, or keying changes. The NUC symbol for each organization that modifies a record is contained in a separate subfield #d. Subfield #d is not repeated when the same NUC symbol would occur in adjacent #d subfields. In an online system, the NUC symbol in the last subfield #d may be used to identify the source of potential modification to a record that contains code b in 008/31 (Record update in process).

Leader/05 c [code indicating revised record]

008/39 c [code indicating LC cooperative program]

040 \$#aMH#cMH#dDLC

[Harvard University and the Library of Congress are collectively responsible for the content, content designation, and transcription.]

Leader/05 c [code indicating revised record]
 008/39 c [code indicating LC cooperative program]
040 §§#aNc#cDLC#dDLC
[The North Carolina State Library and the Library of Congress are collectively responsible for the content; the Library of Congress is responsible for the content designation and transcription. Two modifications by LC are indicated by a single subfield #d.]

| #f - Subject heading/thesaurus conventions

Subfield #f contains a USMARC code for the subject heading/thesaurus conventions used to formulate the heading when field 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus) contains code z (Other). The source of the USMARC code is Part IV: Subject/Index Term Sources of the *USMARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Descriptive Conventions*. (The code is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *USMARC Code List* and is the authoritative agency.)

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Leader/05 Record status
 008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus
 008/31 Record update in process
 008/39 Cataloging source
USMARC Code List for Languages
USMARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Descriptive Conventions: Part IV
 Subject/Index Term Sources

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

Symbols of American Libraries

| 042 Authentication Code (NR)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
ø	Undefined	M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Code

#a	Authentication code (R)	M
----	-------------------------	---

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field will contain one or more authentication codes assigned by centers that review (and upgrade, if necessary) an authority record in a national database. When defined, the authentication codes will be compatible with those used in other cooperative projects.

043 Geographic Area Code (NR)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
ø	Undefined	M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Code

#a	Geographic area code (R)	M
----	--------------------------	---

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains as many as three USMARC geographic area codes (GAC) for geographic areas associated with the 1XX heading in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f). A more precise identification of geographic areas associated with a geographic name heading may be contained in field 052 (Geographic Classification Code). (Field 043 is an authoritative-agency field. The Library of Congress maintains the *USMARC Code List for Geographic Areas* and is the authoritative agency.)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODE**#a - Geographic area code**

Subfield #a contains a USMARC code for a geographic area. Each geographic area code associated with a heading is seven characters in length and is contained in a separate subfield #a.

100 10#aFord, Gerald R.,#d1913- #xMuseums, relics, etc.#zMichigan
043 øø#an-us-mi

110 10#aFrance.#tTreaties, etc.#gPoland,#d1948 Mar. 2
043 øø#ae-fr---#ae-pl---

043

130 \$0+aBible\$zGermany
043 \$y\$ae-gx---

150 \$0+aCanadian Grand Prix Race
043 \$y\$an-cn---

150 \$0+aWater resources development\$zKenya
043 \$y\$af-ke---

151 \$0+aAmazon River
043 \$y\$asa-----

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Structure

All alphabetical characters are input in lowercase. Embedded and trailing hyphens are carried in the USMARC record. Trailing hyphens need not be input; they may be system generated. A detailed description of the structure and use of GACs is contained in *USMARC Code List for Geographic Areas*.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

052 Geographic Classification Code
USMARC Code List for Geographic Areas

Time Period Code Table

<u>B.C.</u>			
<u>Code</u>			
<u>Time period</u>			
a0	before 2999	<i>(Add 0, 1, 2 ... 9 to each alphabetic character for the decade)</i>	
b0	2999-2900	e	1-99
b1	2899-2800	f	100-199
b2	2799-2700	g	200-299
b3	2699-2600	h	300-399
b4	2599-2500	i	400-499
b5	2499-2400	j	500-599
b6	2399-2300	k	600-699
b7	2299-2200	l	700-799
b8	2199-2100	m	800-899
b9	2099-2000	n	900-999
c0	1999-1900	o	1000-1099
c1	1899-1800	p	1100-1199
c2	1799-1700	q	1200-1299
c3	1699-1600	r	1300-1399
c4	1599-1500	s	1400-1499
c5	1499-1400	t	1500-1599
c6	1399-1300	u	1600-1699
c7	1299-1200	v	1700-1799
c8	1199-1100	w	1800-1899
c9	1099-1000	x	1900-1999
d0	999-900	y	2000-2099
d1	899-800		
d2	799-700		
d3	699-600		
d4	599-500		
d5	499-400		
d6	399-300		
d7	299-200		
d8	199-100		
d9	99-1		

For **B.C.** dates, the lowercase alphabetic character represents the millennium and the digit represents the century. If the century is not known, a hyphen (-) is used instead of a number. A single century or a period within a century is coded by repeating the appropriate two-character code to create the required four-characters.

151 \$0+aRome#xHistory#yRepublic, 265-30 B.C.
045 \$y#ad7d9

150 \$0+aBronze age
045 \$y#aa-c-
[3000-1000 B.C.]

151 \$0+aEgypt#xHistory#yEighteenth dynasty, ca. 1570-1320 B.C.
045 \$y#ac4c6

045 - p. 3
March 1990

A.D. dates, the lowercase alphabetic character represents the century. A digit (0-9) added to represent the decade. If the decade is not known, a hyphen (-) is used ahead of a number. A single year or a period within a decade is coded by repeating appropriate two-character code to create the required four characters.

51 \$0+aGreat Britain#xHistory#yMedieval period, 1066-1485

45 \$0+a06s8

50 \$0+aBhopal Union Carbide Plant Disaster, Bhopal, India, 1984

45 \$0+ax8x8

50 \$0+aCivilization, Modern#y20th century

45 \$0+ax-x-

50 \$0+aCatalan literature#y16th-18th centuries

45 \$0+at-v-

51 \$0+aGreece#xHistory#y146 B.C.-323 A.D.

45 \$0+ad8h2

50 \$0+aTwenty-first century#xForecasts

45 \$0+ay-y-

rmatted 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period

Subfield **#b** contains a specific time period formatted as *yyyymmddhh*, preceded by a indicator for the era (*c* for B.C.; *d* for A.D.). The era and year are required components; month, day, and hour are optional.

-era expressed as a code: *c* (B.C.), *d* (A.D.)

-year expressed as a four-digit number (0000 to 9999) right justified; unused positions contain zeros

-month expressed as a two-digit number (01 to 12) right justified; unused positions contain zeros

-day expressed as a two-digit number (01 to 31) right justified; unused positions contain zeros

-hour expressed as a two-digit number using the 24-hour clock (00 to 23) right justified; unused positions contain zeros.

First indicator position values 0-2 specify whether the time period in subfield **#b** is a single date, multiple dates, or a range of dates. Each 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period associated with the heading is contained in a separate subfield **#b**.

151 \$0+aFrance#xHistory#yRevolution, 1791-1797

045 2\$#bd1791#bd1797

151 \$0+aJapan#xHistory#yFebruary Incident, 1936 (February 26)

045 0\$#bd19360226

151 \$0+aChina#xHistory#y221 B.C.-960 A.D.

045 2\$#ad7n6#bc0221#bd0960

#c - Formatted pre-9999 B.C. time period

Subfield #c contains a formatted time period consisting of as many numeric characters as are needed to represent the number of years B.C. First indicator position values 0-2 specify whether the time period in subfield #c is a single date, multiple dates, or a range of dates. Each pre-9999 B.C. time period associated with the heading is contained in a separate subfield #c.

150 \$0#aGeology, Stratigraphic\$yMesozoic
045 2# #c225000000#c70000000

INPUT CONVENTIONS**Punctuation**

No marks of punctuation are used in field 045.

Order of subfields

Subfield #c (Formatted pre-9999 B.C. time period) is input preceding subfield #b (Formatted 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period).

| CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

First Indicator - Type of time period in subfield #b or #c
#b 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period, formatted
#c Pre-9999 B.C. time period, formatted

Subfield #b was redefined for 9999 B.C. through A.D. time periods when subfield #c was defined for pre-9999 B.C. time periods in 1987. Prior to that time, all dates/times were contained in subfield #b.

Time Period Code Table

	<u>B.C.</u>		<u>A.D.</u>
<u>Code</u>	<u>Time period</u>	<u>Code</u>	<u>Time period</u>
a0	before 2999		
b0	2999-2900	(Add 0, 1, 2 ... 9 to each alphabetic character for the decade)	
b1	2899-2800		
b2	2799-2700		
b3	2699-2600	e _	1-99
b4	2599-2500	f _	100-199
b5	2499-2400	g _	200-299
b6	2399-2300	h _	300-399
b7	2299-2200	i _	400-499
b8	2199-2100	j _	500-599
b9	2099-2000	k _	600-699
c0	1999-1900	l _	700-799
c1	1899-1800	m _	800-899
c2	1799-1700	n _	900-999
c3	1699-1600	o _	1000-1999
c4	1599-1500	p _	1100-1199
c5	1499-1400	q _	1200-1299
c6	1399-1300	r _	1300-1399
c7	1299-1200	s _	1400-1499
c8	1199-1100	t _	1500-1599
c9	1099-1000	u _	1600-1699
d0	999-900	v _	1700-1799
d1	899-800	w _	1800-1899
d2	799-700	x _	1900-1999
d3	699-600	y _	2000-2099
d4	599-500		
d5	499-400		
d6	399-300		
d7	299-200		
d8	199-100		
d9	99-1		

For B.C. dates, the lowercase alphabetic character represents the millennium and the digit represents the century. If the century is not known, a hyphen (-) is used instead of a number. A single century or a period within a century is coded by repeating the appropriate two-character code to create the required four-characters.

151 \$0+aRome+\$xHistory+\$yRepublic, 265-30 B.C.
 045 \$b#ad7d9

150 \$0+aBronze age
 045 \$b#aa-c-
 /3000-1000 B.C.]

151 \$0+aEgypt+\$xHistory+\$yEighteenth dynasty, ca. 1570-1320 B.C.
 045 \$b#ac4c6

Time Period Code Table

<u>B.C.</u>			
<u>Code</u>	<u>Time period</u>	<u>Code</u>	<u>Time period</u>
a0	before 2999		
b0	2999-2900	(Add 0, 1, 2 ... 9 to each alphabetic character for the decade)	
b1	2899-2800		
b2	2799-2700		
b3	2699-2600	e _	1-99
b4	2599-2500	f _	100-199
b5	2499-2400	g _	200-299
b6	2399-2300	h _	300-399
b7	2299-2200	i _	400-499
b8	2199-2100	j _	500-599
b9	2099-2000	k _	600-699
c0	1999-1900	l _	700-799
c1	1899-1800	m _	800-899
c2	1799-1700	n _	900-999
c3	1699-1600	o _	1000-1999
c4	1599-1500	p _	1100-1199
c5	1499-1400	q _	1200-1299
c6	1399-1300	r _	1300-1399
c7	1299-1200	s _	1400-1499
c8	1199-1100	t _	1500-1599
c9	1099-1000	u _	1600-1699
d0	999-900	v _	1700-1799
d1	899-800	w _	1800-1899
d2	799-700	x _	1900-1999
d3	699-600	y _	2000-2099
d4	599-500		
d5	499-400		
d6	399-300		
d7	299-200		
d8	199-100		
d9	99-1		

For B.C. dates, the lowercase alphabetic character represents the millennium and the digit represents the century. If the century is not known, a hyphen (-) is used instead of a number. A single century or a period within a century is coded by repeating the appropriate two-character code to create the required four-characters.

151 \$0+aRome+\$xHistory+\$yRepublic, 265-30 B.C.
 045 \$b\$ad7d9

150 \$0+aBronze age
 045 \$b\$aa-c-
 /3000-1000 B.C.]

151 \$0+aEgypt+\$xHistory+\$yEighteenth dynasty, ca. 1570-1320 B.C.
 045 \$b\$ac4c6

For A.D. dates, the lowercase alphabetic character represents the century. A digit (0-9) is added to represent the decade. If the decade is not known, a hyphen (-) is used instead of a number. A single year or a period within a decade is coded by repeating the appropriate two-character code to create the required four characters.

151 \$0#aGreat Britain\$xFxHistory\$yMedieval period, 1066-1485
 045 \$y#a06s8

150 \$0#aBhopal Union Carbide Plant Disaster, Bhopal, India, 1984
 045 \$y#ax8x8

150 \$0#aCivilization, Modern\$y20th century
 045 \$y#ax-x-

150 \$0#aCatalan literature\$y16th-18th centuries
 045 \$y#at-v-

151 \$0#aGreece\$xFxHistory\$y146 B.C.-323 A.D.
 045 \$y#ad8h2

150 \$0#aTwenty-first century\$xFxForecasts
 045 \$y#ay-y-

| **#b - Formatted 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period**

| Subfield #b contains a specific time period formatted as *yyyymmddhh*, preceded by a code for the era (c for B.C.; d for A.D.). The era and year are required components; the month, day, and hour are optional.

- era expressed as a code: c (B.C.), d (A.D.)
- year expressed as a four-digit number (0000 to 9999) right justified; unused positions contain zeros
- month expressed as a two-digit number (01 to 12) right justified; unused positions contain zeros
- day expressed as a two-digit number (01 to 31) right justified; unused positions contain zeros
- hour expressed as a two-digit number using the 24-hour clock (00 to 23) right justified; unused positions contain zeros.

First indicator position values 0-2 specify whether the time period in subfield #b is a single date, multiple dates, or a range of dates. Each 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period associated with the heading is contained in a separate subfield #b.

151 \$0#aFrance\$xFxHistory\$yRevolution, 1791-1797
 045 2\$y#bd1791\$bd1797

151 \$0#aJapan\$xFxHistory\$yFebruary Incident, 1936 (February 26)
 045 0\$y#b19360226

151 \$0#aChina\$xFxHistory\$y221 B.C.-960 A.D.
 045 2\$y#ad7n6\$bc0221\$bd0960

| **#c - Formatted pre-9999 B.C. time period**

Subfield #c contains a formatted time period consisting of as many numeric characters as are needed to represent the number of years B.C. First indicator position values 0-2 specify whether the time period in subfield #c is a single date, multiple dates, or a range of dates. Each pre-9999 B.C. time period associated with the heading is contained in a separate subfield #c.

150 \$0#aGeology, Stratigraphic\$yMesozoic
045 2# #c225000000#c70000000

| **INPUT CONVENTIONS**| **Punctuation**

| No marks of punctuation are used in field 045.

| **Order of subfields**

| Subfield #c (Formatted pre-9999 B.C. time period) is input preceding subfield #b (Formatted 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period).

050 Library of Congress Call Number (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
ø	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Source of call number	M
0	Assigned by LC	A
4	Assigned by agency other than LC	A

Subfield Codes

#a	Classification number (NR)	M
#b	Item number (NR)	A
#d	Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M A
+5	Institution to which field applies (R)	

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a call number for a series when all or part of the series is classified as a collected set or with the main series (646, Series Classification Practice, subfield #a, code c or m). Classification numbers contained in this field are assigned from *Library of Congress Classification* or *LC Classification—Additions and Changes*. The second indicator values distinguish between content actually assigned by the Library of Congress and content assigned by an organization other than LC. The organization is identified in subfield +5.

Field 050 may also contain the volumes/dates to which the call number applies. Varying call numbers for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series or different copies or sets are contained in separate 050 fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Undefined**

The first indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (ø).

Second Indicator - Source of call number

The second indicator position contains a value that indicates whether the source of the call number is the Library of Congress or another organization.

0 - Assigned by LC

Value 0 indicates that the source of the call number is the Library of Congress.

050 \$0#aQC851\$b.L455 subser.

4 - Assigned by agency other than LC

Value 4 indicates that the source of the call number is an organization other than the Library of Congress. The National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization is contained in subfield #5.

050 \$4#aQH198.H3\$bC66#5DI

■ SUBFIELD CODES**#a - Classification number**

Subfield #a contains the classification number portion of the series call number. (The classification number is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Library of Congress Classification* and the *LC Classification—Additions and Changes* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 \$0#aMémoires et documents publiés par la Société d'histoire de la Suisse
romande

| 050 \$0#aDQ3\$b.S6

#b - Item number

Subfield #b contains the item number portion of the series call number. Organizations that use the *Cutter-Sanborn Three-Figure Author Table* may conform to Library of Congress item number practice by applying *Subject Cataloging Manual: Shelflisting* procedures. Subfield #b may also contain a copy (or set) number.

111 20#aInternational Kimberlite Conference\$n(3rd :\$d1982 :\$cClermont-Ferrand,
France).#tKimberlites

| 050 \$0#aQE462.K5#bI59

#d - Volumes/dates to which call number applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the call number applies. Subfield #d is used only when the call number does not apply to all items of the series. This subfield may also contain a copy (or set) number.

130 \$0#aBulletin (United States. Bureau of Plant Industry)

| 050 \$0#aQK1\$b.U45#dno. 1-200, copy 1; no. 201-

#5 - Institution to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the NUC symbol of the organization that assigned the series call number when the second indicator position contains value 4. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

050 \$4#aHD1694.S6#bC55#5DI

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Capitalization

Alphabetic characters in the classification number portion of the field are always uppercase. No space separates the alphabetic character(s) from the class number.

Order

The 050 field for a *current* call number precedes the 050 field for an *earlier* call number.

Display Constant

Applies to: *[associated with the content of subfield #d]*

An instruction phrase such as *Applies to:* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #d.

Content designated field:

| 050 \$0#aQK1#b.U45#dno. 1-200

Display example:

QK1.U45 Applies to: no. 1-200

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

646 Series Classification Practice

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

Cutter-Sanborn Three-Figure Author Table
Library of Congress Classification
LC Classification—Additions and Changes
Subject Cataloging Manual: Shelflisting
Symbols of American Libraries

050

| CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Second Indicator - Source of Call Number

The second indicator position was defined in 1987. Prior to that change, 050 was an agency-assigned field and contained only call numbers assigned by the Library of Congress. LC records created before the definition of this indicator may contain a blank (ø) meaning *undefined* in this position.

052 Geographic Classification Code (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
þ	Undefined	M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
þ	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

#a	Geographic classification area code (NR)	M
#b	Geographic classification subarea code (R)	A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a geographic classification code for a geographic area associated with the 151 field in an established heading record or a subdivision record for a geographic name (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f). Each main geographic area code and any related subarea codes associated with the heading are contained in a separate 052 field.

The geographic classification code is derived from the *Library of Congress Classification—Class G* and expanded Cutter number lists for place names. Cutter numbers for place names in the United States are also published in *Geographic Cutters*. This code can provide more precise geographic access than the codes contained in field 043 (Geographic Area Code). (Field 052 is an authoritative-agency field. The Library of Congress maintains the *Library of Congress Classification*, *Geographic Cutters*, and the Cutter number lists and is the authoritative agency.)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (þ).

052

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Geographic classification area code

Subfield #a contains a four to six character numeric code for the main geographic area associated with the heading. The code consists of the appropriate classification number from the range G3190-G9980 derived from the *Library of Congress Classification—Class G* by dropping the letter G.

151 \$0#aMexico+\$xEconomic conditions+\$y1970-
052 \$0#a4411

#b - Geographic classification subarea code

Subfield #b contains an alphanumeric Cutter number for a geographic subarea of the geographic area coded in subfield #a. Each geographic subarea code is contained in a separate subfield #b. Subfield #b may be repeated for subareas falling within a main area with the same code.

151 \$0#aRichmond (Tex.)+\$xMaps
052 \$0#a4034#bR4#bR8

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation

The period that usually precedes a Cutter number is omitted in subfield #b. Field 052 does not end with a period.

Capitalization

Alphabetic characters are recorded in uppercase.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

043 Geographic Area Code

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

Library of Congress Classification—Class G
LC Classification—Additions and Changes
Geographic Cutters

053 LC Classification Number (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
Ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

#a	Classification number—single number or beginning number of a range (NR)	M
#b	Classification number—end number of a range (NR)	A
#c	Explanatory term (NR)	A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a single LC classification number or a range of numbers associated with a 1XX heading in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f). The classification number(s) may be qualified by a descriptive term when the heading is represented in more than one place in the LC classification schedules. Each classification number or range of numbers associated with a heading is contained in a separate 053 field. (Field 053 is an authoritative-agency field. The Library of Congress maintains the *Library of Congress Classification* schedules and the *LC Classification—Additions and Changes* and is the authoritative agency.)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Classification number—single number or b
Subfield #a contains a single class number
bers.

100 10#bGrimes, Martha
053 ØØ#aPS3557.R48998

130 ØØ#aBook of Mormon#xAntiquities
053 ØØ#aBX8627

053

#b - Classification number—end number of a range

Subfield #b contains the end number of a range of class numbers when the beginning number of the range is contained in subfield #a.

151 \$0#aUnited States\$xHistory\$yRevolution, 1775-1783
053 \$y#aE201+bE298

#c - Explanatory term

Subfield #c contains a term or phrase that specifies the topic of the class number. Normally, such a phrase is used to differentiate between two or more class numbers associated with the heading.

150 \$0#aString quartet
053 \$y#aML1160#cHistory
053 \$y#aMT728#cInstruction and study

110 20#aCatholic Church\$xHistory\$xSources
053 \$y#aBX850+bBX875+cDocuments

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Structure

All alphabetic characters in the LC classification number are uppercase. No space separates the alphabetic character(s) from the class number.

Display Constants

- [hyphen associated with the content of subfield #a and #b]
(...) [parentheses associated with the content of subfield #c]

The hyphen between the two class numbers in a range of numbers in subfields #a and #b and the parentheses that may enclose the explanatory term in subfield #c are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the content of subfields #b and #c, respectively.

Content designated field:
053 \$y#aBX850+bBX875+cDocuments

Display example:
BX850-BX875 (Documents)

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

*Library of Congress Classification
LC Classification—Additions and Changes*

Display Constants

- [hyphen associated with the content of subfield †b]
(...) [parentheses associated with the content of subfield †c]

The hyphen between the two class numbers in a range of numbers in subfields †a and †b and the parentheses that may enclose the explanatory term in subfield †c are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the content of subfields †b and †c, respectively.

Content designated field:

053 \$1#BX850\$2BX875\$cDocuments

Display example:

BX850-BX875 (Documents)

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

*Library of Congress Classification
LC Classification—Additions and Changes*

060 National Library of Medicine Call Number (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
	Undefined	M

<u>Second</u>	Source of call number	M
0	Assigned by NLM	A
4	Assigned by agency other than NLM	A

Subfield Codes

#a	Classification number (NR)	M
#b	Item number (NR)	A
#d	Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M
#5	Institution to which field applies (R)	A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a call number for a series when all or part of the series is classified as a collected set or with the main series (646, Series Classification Practice, subfield #a, code c or m). Classification numbers contained in this field are assigned from the *National Library of Medicine Classification* schedules QS-QZ and W for preclinical sciences and medicine that are maintained by the National Library of Medicine (NLM) or from the *Library of Congress Classification* schedules for peripheral and related topics that are used by NLM. The second indicator values distinguish between content actually assigned by the National Library of Medicine and content assigned by an organization other than NLM. The organization is identified in subfield #5.

Field 060 may also contain the volumes/dates to which the call number applies. Varying call numbers for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series or different copies or sets are contained in separate 060 fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Undefined**

The first indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (ø).

060

Second Indicator - Source of call number

The second indicator position contains a value that indicates whether the source of the call number is the National Library of Medicine or another organization.

0 - Assigned by NLM

Value 0 indicates that the source of the call number is the National Library of Medicine.

060 \$0#aW1#bJO706M

4 - Assigned by agency other than NLM

Value 4 indicates that the source of the call number is an organization other than the National Library of Medicine. The National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization is carried in subfield #5.

060 \$4#W1#bRI218#5CLU-M

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Classification number

Subfield #a contains the classification number portion of the series call number. (The classification number is an authoritative-agency data element. The National Library of Medicine maintains the *National Library of Medicine Classification* and is the authoritative agency. NLM is also the authoritative agency for determining which *Library of Congress Classification* schedules and numbers are used to augment the NLM scheme.)

130 \$0#aJournal of infection

060 \$0#aW1#bJO706M

#b - Item number

Subfield #b contains the item number portion of the NLM call number for a series. As a general rule, NLM uses the *Cutter-Sanborn Three-Figure Author Table* to create item numbers. The special scheme of numbering used in classes W1 and W3 is described in the *National Library of Medicine Classification*. This subfield may also contain a copy (or set) number.

130 \$0#aTrauma management

060 \$0#aWO 700#bT776

#d - Volumes/dates to which call number applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the call number applies. Subfield #d is used only when the call number does not apply to all items of the series. This subfield may also contain a copy (or set) number.

#5 - Institution to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the NUC symbol of the organization that assigned the NLM call number when the second indicator position contains value 4. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

060 \$4#aW1#bRI218#5CLU-M

INPUT CONVENTIONS**Order**

The 060 field for a *current* call number precedes the 060 field for an *earlier* call number.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

646 Series Classification Practice

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

Cutter-Sanborn Three-Figure Author Table
Library of Congress Classification
LC Classification—Additions and Changes
National Library of Medicine Classification
Symbols of American Libraries

| 066 Character Sets Present (NR)

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined ø Undefined	M M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined ø Undefined	M M

Subfield Codes

#a	Non-ASCII G0 default character set designation (NR)	O
#b	Non-ANSEL G1 default character set designation (NR)	O
#c	Alternate graphic character set identification (R)	M

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the Intermediate and Final characters of the standard escape sequence(s) that specify the character sets present in a record when a character set other than ASCII, ANSEL, or the USMARC Greek, USMARC subscript, or USMARC superscript is present. The presence of field 066 indicates that special machine processing may be required for the record. In USMARC records, field 066#c must be present when a record contains nonroman data in field 880 (Alternate Graphic Representation). A detailed description of the standard escape sequences used in USMARC records is provided in *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes*.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**#a - Non-ASCII G0 default character set designation**

Subfield #a contains the Intermediate and Final characters of the standard escape sequence that designates and invokes the default G0 character set when it is not ASCII, USMARC Greek, USMARC subscript, or USMARC superscript. Subfield #a is unlikely to be used in records created in the United States.

066 øø#a(N

[The ASCII graphics (N identify the G0 one-byte-per-character Basic Cyrillic character set.]

066 øø#a\$1

[The ASCII graphics \$1 identify the G0 multiple-bytes-per-character Chinese, Japanese, Korean character set.]

066

‡b - Non-ANSEL G1 default character set designation

Subfield ‡b contains the Intermediate and Final characters of the standard escape sequence that designates and invokes the default G1 character set when it is not ANSEL. Subfield ‡b is unlikely to be used in records created in the United States.

066   ‡b\$1

[The ASCII graphics \$)1 identify the G1 multiple-bytes-per-character Chinese, Japanese, Korean character set.]

066   ‡b)Q

[The ASCII graphics)Q identify the G1 one-byte-per-character Extended Cyrillic character set.]

‡c - Alternate graphic character set identification

Subfield ‡c contains the Intermediate and Final characters of each escape sequence that designates an alternate graphic character set used in a record. The escape sequence for each alternate character set present is contained in a separate subfield ‡c.

066   ‡c)S

[The ASCII graphics)S identify the G1 one-byte-per-character Greek character set.]

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

880 Alternate Graphic Representation

USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes

070 National Agricultural Library Call Number (R)*O*Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
þ	Undefined	<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
þ	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#a	Classification number (NR)	<i>M</i>
#b	Item number (NR)	<i>A</i>
#d	Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	(current) <i>O</i> (earlier) <i>M</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a National Agricultural Library (NAL) call number for a series when all or part of the series is classified as a collected set or with the main series (646, Series Classification Practice, subfield #a, code c or m). Field 070 is an agency-assigned field. It is used only for call numbers assigned by the National Agricultural Library. This field may also contain NAL accession numbers for visual materials.

Field 070 may also contain the volumes/dates to which the call number applies. Varying call numbers for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series are contained in separate 070 fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each

070

■ SUBFIELD CODES

*a - Classification number

Subfield *a contains the classification number portion of the NAL call number for a series. Prior to 1965, NAL used a USDA library classification scheme. In 1965, NAL began using the *Library of Congress Classification* for all newly-cataloged materials. Both schemes are still used because some series title changes have been kept with the USDA scheme call number.

070 \$~~a~~^ba99.8#bF76322
070 \$~~a~~^bQH545.A1T6

*b - Item number

Subfield *b contains the NAL item number.

070 \$~~a~~^ba99.8#bF76322

*d - Volumes/dates to which call number applies

Subfield *d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the call number applies. Subfield *d is used only when the call number does not apply to all items of the series. This subfield may also contain a copy (or set) number.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Order

The 070 field for a *current* call number precedes the 070 field for an *earlier* call number.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

646 Series Classification Practice

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

USDA Library Classification Schedules
Library of Congress Classification
LC Classification--Additions and Changes

072 Subject Category Code (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
ø	Undefined	M

<u>Second</u>	Code source	M
ø	No information provided	A
0	National Agricultural Library subject category code list	A
7	Code source specified in subfield #2	A

Subfield Codes

#a	Subject category code (NR)	M
#x	Subject category code subdivision (R)	A
#2	Code source (NR)	A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a code for the subject category that is associated with the 1XX field in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) or a node label record (008/09, code e). The code may indicate the relative position of the heading in a particular hierarchical arrangement in the thesaurus specified by the value in the second indicator position. Field 072 is repeated for each location of the heading in a specific thesaurus and for multiple subject category codes when a heading is common to different thesauri.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Undefined**

The first indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (ø).

Second Indicator - Code source

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the source of the subject category code.

Ø - No information provided

A blank (Ø) indicates that the source of the subject category code is the same as the subject heading system/thesaurus identified in 008/11 (Subject heading system).

008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]
 150 Ø0+aAtrophy
 072 ØØ+aC23+x.739+x.102

0 - National Agricultural Library subject category code list

Value 0 indicates that the source of the subject category code is the list used by NAL. Value 0 is an authoritative-agency data element. Its use requires that the source of the subject category code is the *AGRIS: Subject Categories*.

008/11 d [code indicating NAL]
 150 Ø0+aContamination and toxicology
 072 Ø0+aQ200

7 - Code source specified in subfield #2

Value 7 indicates that the code source is specified in subfield #2.

008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]
 150 Ø0+aIrrigation
 072 Ø7+aE5+x.510#2MeSH

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Subject category code

Subfield #a contains a subject category code that indicates the broad subject category to which the heading belongs in a hierarchically-arranged thesaurus.

008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]
 150 Ø0+aLibraries, Hospital
 072 ØØ+aL1+x.346+x.596+x.463
 072 ØØ+aN2+x.278+x.354+x.560
 072 ØØ+aN4+x.452+x.442+x.468

008/09 e [node label record]
 008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]
 150 Ø0+aNeoplastic Process
 072 ØØ+aC4+x.805

#x - Subject category code subdivision

Subfield #x contains a code that indicates the level of specificity within the broader category represented by the code in subfield #a.

008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]
 151 Ø0+aLibya
 072 ØØ+aZ1+x.58+x.266+x.513
 072 ØØ+aZ1+x.630+x.600

#2 - Code source

Subfield #2 contains a USMARC code that identifies the thesaurus used to assign the subject category code when the second indicator position of this field contains value 7. (Subfield #2 is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *USMARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* and is the authoritative agency.)

008/11 a [code indicating LCSH]
150 \$0+aIrrigation
072 \$7+aE5#x.510#2MeSH

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus code
USMARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions

073 Subdivision Usage (NR)*O*Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Code

#a	Subdivision usage (R)	<i>M</i>
#z	Source (NR)	<i>M</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a code specifying the topical or geographic subject terms with which the subdivision may be used in a particular thesaurus. The code may correspond to all or a portion of the subject category code contained in field 072 (Subject Category Code) in an established heading record for a topical term or geographic name (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f). Field 073 is appropriate only in subdivision records (008/09, code d or f).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**#a - Subdivision usage**

Subfield #a contains a category designator that specifies the category of terms with which the subdivision may be used.

#z - Source

Subfield #z contains a USMARC code that identifies the thesaurus used to assign the category designator code. (Subfield #z is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *USMARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* and is the authoritative agency.)

073

In the following example the subdivision *adverse effects* may be used with six categories of terms in the MeSH system, i.e., those coded in field 073 as D (Chemicals and drugs), E (Procedures and technics), F4 (Behavioral tests, therapies, services), etc. The subject heading *Antigens* is in category D (specifically, D24). The category designator *D* in field 073\$a of the subdivision record and the subject category code *D24* in field 072\$a of the established heading record provide a link between the subject subdivision *adverse effects* and the subject heading *Antigens*.

008/09 d [subdivision record]
008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]
150 \$1\$#aadverse effects
073 \$1\$#aD#aE#aF4#aG3#aH#aJ#zMeSH

008/09 a [established heading record]
008/11 c [code indicating MeSH]
150 \$1\$0#aAntigens
072 \$1\$#aD24#x.611#x.216

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

072 Subject Category Code
USMARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions

082 Dewey Decimal Call Number (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Type of edition	M
0	Full edition	A
1	Abridged edition	A

<u>Second</u>	Source of call number	M
0	Assigned by LC	A
4	Assigned by agency other than LC	A

Subfield Codes

#a	Classification number (NR)	M
#b	Item number (NR)	A
#d	Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M
#2	Edition number (NR)	M
#5	Institution to which field applies (R)	A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a call number for a series when all or part of the series is classified as a collected set or with the main series (646, Series Classification Practice, subfield #a, code c or m). Classification numbers in this field are assigned from *Dewey Decimal Classification*, the *Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification*, or *DC&: Dewey Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions*. The second indicator values distinguish between content actually assigned by the Library of Congress and content assigned by an organization other than LC. The organization is identified in subfield #5.

Field 082 also contains the specific edition of the type of Dewey schedule (identified by the first indicator value) from which the classification number was assigned and may contain the volumes/dates to which the call number applies. Varying call numbers for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series or different copies or sets are contained in separate 082 fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Type of edition**

The first indicator position contains a value that specifies whether the classification number is from the full or the abridged edition of the classification schedules. The actual edition number is contained in subfield #2.

082

0 - Full edition

Value 0 indicates that the class number is from the full edition.

082 00#a780.92#220

1 - Abridged edition

Value 1 indicates that the class number is from the abridged edition.

082 10#a552#212

Second Indicator - Source of call number

The second indicator position contains a value that indicates whether the source of the call number is the Library of Congress or another organization.

0 - Assigned by LC

Value 0 indicates that the source of the call number is the Library of Congress.

082 00#a345.73#220

4 - Assigned by agency other than LC

Value 4 indicates that the source of the call number is an organization other than the Library of Congress. The National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization is contained in subfield #5.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

| #a - Classification number

Subfield #a contains the classification number portion of the series call number. (The classification number is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Dewey Decimal Classification*, the *Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification*, and the *DC&* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 #0Mémoires et documents publiés par la Société d'histoire de la Suisse
082 00#a949.4#220

| #b - Item number

Subfield #b contains the item number portion of the series call number. This subfield may also contain a copy (or set) number.

#d - Volumes/dates to which call number applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the call number applies. Subfield #d is used only when the call number does not apply to all items of the series. This subfield may also contain a copy (or set) number.

#2 - Edition number

Subfield #2 contains the number of the edition of the Dewey classification schedules from which the class number was assigned. If numbers are assigned from more than one edition, each number or range of numbers is contained in a separate 082 field.

111 20#*a*International Kimberlite Conference#n(3rd :#d1982 :#cClermont-Ferrand,
France).#tKimberlites
082 00#a552.3#220
082 10#a552#212

#5 - Institution to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the NUC symbol of the organization that assigned the call number when the second indicator position contains value 4. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Order

The 082 field for a *current* call number precedes the 082 field for an *earlier* call number.

Display Constant

dc [abbreviation associated with the content of subfield #2]

The abbreviation *dc* that may be displayed before the edition number in subfield #2 is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant.

Content designated field:

082 10#a552#212

Display example:

552 dc12

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

646 Series Classification Practice

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index
Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index
DC&: Dewey Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions
Symbols of American Libraries

083 Dewey Decimal Classification Number (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Type of edition	M
0	Full edition	A
I	Abridged edition	A

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
þ	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

#a	Classification number—single number or beginning number of a range (NR)	M
#b	Classification number—end number of a range (NR)	A
#c	Explanatory term (NR)	A
#2	Edition number (NR)	M

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a single Dewey decimal classification number or a range of numbers associated with a 1XX heading in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record code, code a, d, or f). The classification number(s) may be qualified by a descriptive term when the heading is represented in more than one place in the Dewey classification schedules. Each classification number or range of numbers associated with a heading is contained in a separate 083 field. (Field 083 is an authoritative-agency field. The Library of Congress maintains the *Dewey Decimal Classification*, the *Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification*, and the DC& and is the authoritative agency.)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Type of edition**

The first indicator position contains a value that specifies whether the class number is from the full or the abridged edition of the classification schedules. The actual edition number is contained in subfield #2.

083

0 - Full edition

Value 0 indicates that the class number is from the full edition.

150 \$0\$aAviation medicine
083 0\$0a616.980213#220

1 - Abridged edition

Value 1 indicates that the class number is from the abridged edition.

150 \$0\$aAviation medicine
083 1\$0a616.9#212

Second Indicator - Undefined

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (\$).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Classification number—single number or beginning number of a range

Subfield #a contains a single class number or the first number in a range of class numbers.

130 \$0+aBible.#lEnglish.#sAuthorized
083 0\$0a220.5203#220

151 \$0+aChina
083 0\$0a951#212

#b - Classification number—end number of a range

Subfield #b contains the end number of a range of class numbers when the beginning number of the range is contained in subfield #a.

150 \$0+aWorld War, 1939-1945#xPersonal narratives
083 0\$0a940.5481#b940.5482#220

#c - Explanatory term

Subfield #c contains a term or phrase that specifies the topic of the class number. Normally, such a phrase is used to differentiate between two or more class numbers associated with the heading.

150 \$0\$aGold
083 0\$0a669.22#cInterdisciplinary#220
083 0\$0a549.23#cMineralogy#220
083 0\$0a553.41#cEconomic geology#220

#2 - Edition number

Subfield #2 contains the number of the edition of the classification schedules from which the class number was assigned. If numbers are assigned from more than one edition, each number or range of numbers is contained in a separate 083 field.

```
100 10#aSartre, Jean Paul#d1905-
083 0$b#a848.91409#cInterdisciplinary#220
083 0$b#a194#220
```

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Display Constants

- [hyphen associated with the content of subfields #a and #b]
- (...) [parentheses associated with the content of subfield #c]
- dc [abbreviation associated with the content of subfield #2]

The hyphen between the two class numbers in a range of numbers in subfields #a and #b, the parentheses that may enclose an explanatory term in subfield #c, and the abbreviation *dc* before the edition number in subfield #2 are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the content of subfields #b, #c, and #2, respectively.

Content designated field:

```
083 0$b#a346.3#b346.9#cSpecific jurisdictions and areas#220
```

Display example:

346.3-346.9 (Specific jurisdictions and areas) dc20

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENTS

Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index

Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index

DC&: Dewey Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions

09X Local Call Numbers

O

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The 090-099 fields are reserved for a locally assigned call number for a series when all or part of the series is classified as a collected set or with the main series (646, Series Classification Practice, subfield †a, code c or m). For interchange purposes, the practices used in fields 09X should be known by parties involved in the interchange.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

646 Series Classification Practice

| CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY**090 Local Call Number [OBSOLETE]**

Field 090 was made obsolete in all USMARC specifications when the entire 09X block of numbers was reserved for local use and definition in 1982. Prior to that change, the field was defined for series call numbers. Both indicators were undefined. The subfield codes were: †a (Classification number), †b (Item number), and †d (Volumes/dates to which call number applies).

X00 Personal Names—General Information

*National Level
Requirement*

100	Heading—Personal Name (NR)	A
400	See From Tracing—Personal Name (R)	A
500	See Also From Tracing—Personal Name (R)	A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Type of personal name entry element	
0	Forename	M
1	Single surname	A
2	Multiple surname	A
3	Family name	A
<u>Second</u>	Nonsiling characters	
0-9	Number of nonsiling characters present	M
		M

Subfield Codes

<i>Name portion</i>		
#a	Personal name (NR)	M
#q	Fuller form of name (NR)	A
#b	Numeration (NR)	A
#c	Titles and other words associated with a name (R)	A
#d	Dates associated with a name (NR)	A
#e	Relator term (R)	O
<i>Name and title portions</i>		
#k	Form subheading (R)	A
<i>Title portion</i>		
#t	Title of a work (NR)	A
#f	Date of a work (NR)	A
#g	Miscellaneous information (NR)	A
#h	Medium (NR)	O
#l	Language of a work (NR)	A
#m	Medium of performance for music (R)	A
#n	Number of part/section of a work (R)	A
#o	Arranged statement for music (NR)	A
#p	Name of part/section of a work (R)	A
#r	Key for music (NR)	A
#s	Version (NR)	A
<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>		
#x	General subdivision (R)	A
#y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
#z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A

X00

Tracing and linking subfields

#i	Reference instruction phrase [400/500] (NR)	A
#w	Control subfield [400/500] (NR)	A
#5	Institution to which field applies [400/500] (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

The content designators identify the subelements occurring in personal name headings constructed according to the generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR 2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH)) that are identified in 008/10 (Descriptive cataloging rules) or 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus). Personal names used in phrase subject headings (e.g., John, the Baptist, Saint, in the Koran) are contained in the X50 fields.

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

The first indicator position contains a value that identifies the form of the entry element of the heading. The values distinguish among forenames, single surnames, multiple surnames, and family names used as the entry element.

0 - Forename

Value 0 indicates that the heading begins with a forename or is a name consisting of words, phrases, initials, separate letters, or numerals that are formatted in direct order.

100 00#*a*Radulfus, #*c*Niger, #*db*. ca. 1140. #*t*Chronica

400 00#*a*Author of The diary of a physician, #*d*1807-1877
[Name is formatted in direct order.]

400 20#*a*Diary of a physician, Author of Thc, #*d*1807-1877
[Name is formatted in inverted order; entry element consists of multiple words; first indicator value is 2.]

100 00#*a*C. E. L. J.

400 10#*a*J., C. E. L.
[Name is formatted in inverted order in field 400; first indicator value is 1.]

400 00#*a*X, #*c*Dr.

400 00#*a*Dr. X

1 - Single surname

Value 1 indicates that the heading is a name with a single surname formatted in inverted order (*single surname, forename*) or a name without forename(s) which is known to be a single surname. If there is uncertainty that a name without forename(s) is a surname, the first indicator position contains value 0.

A surname beginning with a separately written prefix which is an article (e.g., La), a preposition (e.g., De), or a combination (e.g., Del) is classified as a single or multiple surname depending on the number of words following the prefix. When a single word follows the prefix (e.g., Van Rosenburgh), the name is considered a single surname (value 1). When more than one word follows the prefix (e.g., Van Alderwerelt van Rosenburgh), the name is considered a multiple surname (value 2).

- 100 10#aOlearius, Adam, #d1603-1671
 400 10#aOlearius, #cHerr#q(Adam), #d1603-1671
 [Name without forename known to be a surname.]
 400 10#aO., A.#q(Adam Olearius), #d1603-1671
- 100 10#aDe Angelini, Anna
 [Single word follows prefix.]
 400 10#aAngelini, Anna de
- 100 10#aMcCoy, Hal
 100 10#aO'Brien, Gerard
 400 10#aS., Anton D.
- 100 20#aEl-Eisawy, Bashir M.
 [Prefix is an integral part of an anglicized Arabic name; first indicator value is 2.]
 400 10#aEisawy, Bashir M.

2 - Multiple surname

Value 2 indicates that the heading is a name with a multiple surname formatted in inverted order (*multiple surname, forename*) or a name without forename(s) which is known to be a multiple surname.

- 100 20#aAllsworth-Jones, P.
 400 10#aJones, P. Allsworth-
- 100 20#aAlderwerelt van Rosenburgh, C. R. W. K. van#q(Cornelis
 Rugier Willem Karel), #d1863-1936
 400 20#aVan Alderwerelt van Rosenburgh, C. R. W. K. #q(Cornelis Rugier
 Willem Karel), #d1863-1936
 [Multiple words follow separately-written prefix.]
- 100 20#aAleixandre Ferrandis, V.
 100 20#aHinojosa-S., Rolando R.
 100 20#aDigby of Geashill, Frances Noel Digby, #cBaroness, #d1660 or
 61-1684
 100 20#aMateu y Llopis, Felipe, #d1901-
 100 20#aSan Román, Teresa
 100 20#aEl Saffar, Ruth S., #d1941-
 [Anglicized Arabic surname is treated as a multiple surname.]
 100 20#aMc Intosh, Paula
 100 20#aBen Omar, Saidali Bacar, #d1931-

X00

3 - Family name

Value 3 indicates that the heading is the name of a family, clan, dynasty, house, or other such group. The name may be constructed in direct or inverted order.

100 30#aArey family
500 30#aIhrig family

100 30#aGuelf, House of
400 30#aHouse of Guelf

100 30#aAttalid dynasty, #d282-133 B.C.
100 30#aVon der Au family

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the number of character positions associated with an initial definite or indefinite article (e.g., Le, An) at the beginning of a heading that are disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

0 - No nonfiling characters present

Value 0 indicates that no initial article character positions are disregarded.

Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning of a heading that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

100 10#a'Ubaydī, Maḥmūd 'Abd Allah Ibrāhīm

An initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the personal name heading. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

100 00#aAmerican,#cpseud.
[Full pseudonym is An American; indefinite article omitted.]
100 10#aLe Saout, Françoise
[Definite article is an integral part of the name.]

1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters present

A non-zero value indicates that the heading begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. A diacritical mark or special character associated with the initial article (but preceding the first actual filing character) is included in the count of nonfiling characters.

Because the omission of initial articles to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes is common practice, values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in an X00 field.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Personal name

Subfield #a contains a personal name. The name may be a surname and/or forename; letters, initials, abbreviations, phrases, or numbers used in place of a name; or a family name. A parenthetical qualifying term associated with the name is contained in subfield #c.

	100 00#aThomas#c(Anglo-Norman poet)
	100 10#aStoodt, Dieter
	100 20#aGranet Velez, Gail
	100 30#aPlantagenet, House of
	100 30#aPřemyslid dynasty
	 100 10#aKarkhanis, Sharad-
	400 00#aSharad Karkhanis
	 100 00#aW. P.,#cEsq.
	400 10#aP., W.,#cEsq.
	400 00#aWP,#cEsq.

#b - Numeration

Subfield #b contains a roman numeral or a roman numeral and a subsequent part of a forename. It is used only in a forename heading (first indicator, value 0).

100 00#aGustaf#bV,#cKing of Sweden,#d1858-1950
400 00#aOscar Gustaf#bV Adolf,#cKing of Sweden,#d1858-1950

100 10#aAppleton, Victor,#cII, pseud.

[Roman numeral used with a surname heading (first indicator, values 1 or 2) is contained in subfield #c.]

#c - Titles and other words associated with a name

Subfield #c contains titles and other words associated with a name. These include qualifying information such as

- titles designating rank, office, or nobility, e.g., Sir
- terms of address, e.g., Mrs.
- initials of an academic degree or denoting membership in an organization, e.g., F.L.A.
- a roman numeral used with a surname
- other words or phrases associated with the name, e.g., clockmaker, Saint.

If the heading is a surname followed directly by a prefix without intervening forenames or forename initials, the prefix is contained in subfield #c to prevent its being treated as a forename in searching and sorting processes.

400 10#aSanctis,#cDe

X00

Multiple adjacent titles or words associated with a name are contained in a single subfield **#c**. Subfield **#c** is repeated only when words associated with a name are separated by subelements contained in other subfields.

- 100 10#**a**Salisbury, James Cecil,**#c**Earl of,**#dd**. 1683
100 00#**a**Norodom Sihanouk Varman,**#c**King of Cambodia,**#d**1922-
100 00#**a**Cuthbert,**#c**Father, O.S.F.C.,**#d**1866-1939
100 00#**a**Thomas,**#c**Aquinas, Saint,**#d**1225?-1274
100 00#**a**Thomas**#c**(Anglo-Norman poet).**#t**Roman de Tristan.**#l**English
100 10#**a**Saur, Karl-Otto,**#c**Jr.
100 10#**a**Appleton, Victor,**#c**I, pseud.
100 00#**a**Margaret,**#c**Queen, consort of James IV, King of Scotland,
#d1489-1541
100 00#**a**Augustine,**#c**Saint, Bishop of Hippo
100 00#**a**Black Foot,**#c**Chief,**#dd**. 1877**#c**(Spirit)
[Subfield #c is repeated due to intervening subelements.]
- 400 00#**a**Hausbuch,**#c**Meister des,**#d**15th cent.
400 00#**a**Amsterdam Cabinet,**#c**Master of the,**#d**15th cent.
400 10#**a**Weiss, Judah Areyh,**#cha**-Levi
400 10#**a**L'Epée,**#c**abbé de**#q**(Charles-Michel),**#d**1712-1789
400 30#**a**Konbaung dynasty,**#c**Burma,**#d**1752-1885
- 100 10#**a**Massena, André,**#c**prince d'Essling,**#d**1758-1817
400 10#**a**E.,**#c**P. d',**#d**1758-1817

#d - Dates associated with a name

Subfield **#d** contains dates of birth, death, or flourishing or any other date used with a name. A qualifier used with the date (e.g., b., d., ca., fl., ?, cent.) is also contained in subfield **#d**.

- 100 10#**a**Lobb, Theophilus,**#d**1678-1763
100 10#**a**Luckombe, Philip,**#dd**. 1803
100 10#**a**Salant, Yosef Tsevi,**#d**1884 or 5-1981
100 10#**a**Sirillo, Solomon ben Joseph,**#dd**. ca. 1558
100 10#**a**Malalas, John,**#dca**. 491-ca. 578
100 10#**a**Marcellus, Marcus Claudius,**#dd**. 45 B.C.
100 10#**a**Levi, James,**#dfl**. 1706-1739
100 20#**a**Joannes Aegidius, Zamorensis,**#d**1240 or 41-ca. 1316
- 400 10#**a**Compton, Winny,**#db**. 1787

'erm

#e contains a designation of function that describes the relationship between a work.

- 10#**a**Brown, John,**#d**1800-1859,**#ed**defendant

#f - Date of a work

Subfield **#f** contains a date of publication used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

100 10#aDorst, Tankred.#tWorks.#f1985

100 10#aSperoni, Sperone,#d1500-1588.#tSelections.#f1982

400 10#aSperoni, Sperone,#d1500-1588.#tCanace, e scritti in sua difesa.#f1982

A date added parenthetically to a title to distinguish between identical titles entered under the same name is not separately subfield coded.

#g - Miscellaneous information

Subfield **#g** contains a data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield. This subfield code is defined for consistency among the 1XX fields.
Subfield #g is unlikely to be used in an X00 field.

#h - Medium

Subfield **#h** contains a media qualifier used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

100 10#aWagner, Richard,#d1813-1883.#tOuvertüre.#hSound recording

#i - Reference instruction phrase

Subfield **#i** contains a reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield **#w** (Control subfield). Subfield **#i** is appropriate only in the 400 See From Tracing and 500 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield **#i** are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

#k - Form subheading

Subfield **#k** contains a form subheading. A form subheading may occur in either the name or the title portion of an X00 field. Form subheadings used with personal names include *Selections* and *in fiction, drama, poetry, etc.*

100 10#aHusák, Gustáv.#tSpeeches.#kSelections

100 10#aAkhmatova, Anna Andreevna,#d1889-1966.#tSelections.#lEnglish & Russian.#f1985

[The word Selections is used as a uniform title and is contained in subfield #t.]

100 20#aGarcía Lorca, Federico,#d1898-1936,#kin fiction, drama, poetry, etc.

100 00#aDemetrius,#cof Phaleron,#db. 350 B.C.#tDe elocutione.#lRussian

400 00#wnaa#aDemetrius,#cof Phaleron.#kSpurious and doubtful works.

#tDe elocutione.#lRussian

[Pre-AACR 2 use of form subheading.]

X00

#l - Language of a work

Subfield #l contains the name of a language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

- 100 10#aCéline, Louis-Ferdinand,#d1894-1961.#tEntretiens avec le professeur Y.#lEnglish & French
100 10#aJacobs, Una.#tSonnen-Uhr.#lEnglish
100 10#aBrezina, Otokar,#d1868-1929.#tPoems.#lPolyglot

#m - Medium of performance for music

Subfield #m contains term(s) designating the medium of performance used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading.

- 100 10#aBeethoven, Ludwig van,#d1770-1827.#tSonatas,#mpiano,#kSelections
400 10#aSpeer, Daniel,#d1636-1707.#tSonatas,#mcornetts (2), trombones (3),#rC major

Subfield #m is not used for medium of performance information in a title page title used in a name/title heading.

- 100 10#aRies, Ferdinand,#d1784-1838.#tOctets,#mpiano, winds, strings,
#nop. 128,#rAb major
400 10#aRies, Ferdinand,#d1784-1838.#tOctet, opus 128, for piano, clarinet,
horn, bassoon, violin, viola, cello & bass

Multiple adjacent elements in a single medium of performance statement are contained in a single subfield #m. Subfield #m is repeated only when medium of performance statements are separated by subelements contained in other subfields.

- 100 10#aArne, Thomas Augustine,#d1710-1778.#tConcertos,#mkeyboard instrument, orchestra.#nNo. 3.#pCon spirito,#mkeyboard instrument
[Subfield #m is repeated due to intervening subelements.]

Additional examples are under the descriptions of subfields #o and #r.

#n - Number of part/section of a work

Subfield #n contains a *number* designation for a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title heading. "Numbering" is defined as an indication of sequencing in any form, e.g., Part 1, Supplement A, Book two. In music titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number is contained in subfield #n.

- 100 10#aCrisp, Thomas,#d17th cent.#tBabel's-builders unmask't.#nPart 1
100 00#aOvid,#d43 B.C.-17 or 18.#tArs amatoria.#nLiber 1.#lEnglish
400 10#aTolkien, J. R. R.#q(John Roland Reuel),#d1892-1973.#tLord of the rings.#n2.#pTwo towers
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]
400 10#wnnaa#aHindemith, Paul,#d1895-1963.#tSonata,#mpiano, 4 hands#n(1938)
[Parenthetical date in music titles is a part/section of a work.]

400 10#*a*Hindemith, Paul,#d1895-1963.#tVierhaendige Sonata fuer zwei Klaviere, 1938
[Date is not a part/section number.]

Multiple alternative numberings for a part/section (usually separated by commas) are contained in a single subfield #n.

400 20#*a*Mendelssohn-Bartholdy, Felix,#d1809-1847.#tQuartets,#mstrings,
#nno. 7, op. 81

A numbering that indicates a subpart to the first noted part/section (usually separated by a period) is contained in a separate subfield #n.

400 10#*a*Hindemith, Paul,#d1895-1963.#tPieces,#mstring orchestra,
#nop. 44.#nNo. 4

#o - Arranged statement for music

Subfield #o contains the abbreviation *arr.* used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading.

100 10#*a*Telemann, Georg Philipp,#d1681-1767.#tSonatas,#mflutes (2),
#nop. 5; #oarr.
100 10#*a*Schubert, Franz,#d1797-1828.#tSongs.#kSelections;#oarr.

Subfield #o is not used for an arranged statement in a title page title used in a name/title heading.

100 10#*a*Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus,#d1756-1791.#tZauberflöte.#kSelections;
#oarr.
400 10#*a*Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus,#d1756-1791.#tDuetts, for 2 violins or
flutes, arr. from the celebrated opera Zauberflöte

#p - Name of part/section of a work

Subfield #p contains a *name* designation of a part or section of a work used with a title in a name/title heading.

100 10#*a*Hindemith, Paul,#d1895-1963.#tNobilissima visione.#pMeditation
100 10#*a*Praetorius, Hieronymus,#d1560-1629.#tOpus musicum.#pCantiones
sacrae.#pO vos omnes
100 10#*a*Debussy, Claude,#d1862-1918.#tPreludes,#mpiano,#nbook 1.#pCollines
d'Anacapri
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

#q - Fuller form of name

Subfield #q contains a more complete form of the name that is in subfield #a.

100 10#*a*Kalashnikov, S. D.#q(Sergei Dmitrievich)
100 10#*a*Curien, P.-L.#q(Pierre-Louis)
100 00#*a*Claudius#q(Claudius Ceccon)

X00

#r - Key for music

Subfield #r contains the statement of key used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading.

100 10#aBeethoven, Ludwig van,#d1770-1827.#tSonatas,#mpiano,#nno. 13,
op. 27, no. 1,#rE major

Subfield #r is not used for a music key in a title page title used in a name/title heading.

100 10#aMozart Wolfgang Amadeus,#d1756-1791.#tSonatas,#mbassoon,
violoncello,#nK.292,#rBb major,#oarr.

400 10#aMozart Wolfgang Amadeus,#d1756-1791.#tSonata in B flat major,
K 292, for bassoon and piano

#s - Version

Subfield #s contains version, edition, etc., information used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

100 10#aKelly, Michael,#d1762-1826.#tPizarro.#sVocal score

100 00#aRaimon,#d1940-#tSongs.#sTexts.#lSpanish & Catalan.#kSelections

#t - Title of a work

Subfield #t contains a uniform title, a title page title of a work, or a series title used in a name/title heading.

100 10#aLaw, Felicia.#tWays we move

400 10#aLaw, Felicia.#tGetting around!

100 10#aIhara, Saikaku,#d1642-1693.#tSelections.#f1978

100 00#aSatprem,#d1923-#tGenèse du surhomme.#lEnglish

100 00#aLeonardo, #cda Vinci,#d1452-1519.#tLast Supper

100 10#aLewis, C. S.#q(Clive Staples),#d1898-1963.#tChronicles of Narnia (Collier)

Additional examples are under the descriptions of subfields #e, #f, #k, #l, #m, #n, #o, #p, and #r.

#w - Control subfield

Subfield #w contains up to four character positions (designated as #w/0, #w/1, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield #w is appropriate only in the 400 See From Tracing and 500 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield #w are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

#x - General subdivision

Subfield #x contains a subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfields #y (Chronological subdivision) or #z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield #x is appropriate in the X00 fields only when a general topical or form subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

- 100 30#aClark family#xFiction
- 100 10#aBrunhoff, Jean de, #d1899-1937#xCharacters#xBabar
- 100 00#aGautama Buddha#xBiography#xEarly works to 1800
- 100 10#aTatlin, Vladimir Evgafovich, #d1885-1953.#tMonument to the Third International#xCopying
- 100 00#aNapoleon#bI,#cEmperor of the French, #d1769-1821#xAssassination attempt, 1800 (December 24)
- 400 10#aWashington, George, #d1732-1799#xExpedition, 1753-1754

#y - Chronological subdivision

Subfield #y contains a subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield #y is appropriate in the X00 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

- 100 10#aShakespeare, William, #d1564-1616#xCriticism and interpretation
#xHistory#y18th century

#z - Geographic subdivision

Subfield #z contains a geographic subject subdivision. Subfield #z is appropriate in the X00 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

- 100 00#aFrederick#bII,#cHoly Roman Emperor, #d1194-1250#xHomes and haunts#zItaly
- 100 10#aFord, Gerald R., #d1913- #xMuseums#zMicigan

#5 - Institution to which field applies [400/500]

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added a tracing field to a national authority file record. Subfield #5 is appropriate only in the 400 See From Tracing and 500 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #5 are provided in the *Tracings and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

#6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

X00

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings

The following categories are personal names:

Biblical characters, Named	Earls, Houses of
Clans	Families
Counts, Houses of	Houses (Families)
Dukes, Houses of	Royal houses (Families)
Dynasties	

Punctuation

The punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify USMARC punctuation practices.

An X00 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initial/letter, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

100 10#*a*Tomlinson, Bridget
100 10#*a*Marmontel, Jean François, #d1723-1799
100 10#*a*Zweig, Martin.#tWinning on Wall Street
100 10#*a*Carter, Elliott, #d1908-#tSuites, #msaxophones (4)
100 10#*a*Pond, Samuel W.#q(Samuel William)
100 10#*a*Dance, Daryl Cumber.#tShuckin' and jivin'
400 10#*a*Dorst, Tankred.#tWerkausgabe.#f1985

100 10#*a*Sloane, Eugene A.
100 10#*a*Trotignon, Yves.#tXXe siecle en U.R.S.S.
100 10#*a*Sienkiewicz, Henryk, #d1846-1916.#tQuo vadis?
100 10#*a*Kelterboen, Rudolf, #d1931-
400 10#*a*Ashkenazi, Shemu el Yafeh, #d16th cent.
400 10#*a*Sawoskin, A. N.

The name portion of a name/title field ends with a mark of punctuation. The mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark.

100 10#*a*Ravel, Maurice, #d1875-1937.#tSelections;#oarr.
100 00#*a*Thomas#c(Anglo-Norman poet).#tRoman de Tristan.#lEnglish
100 00#*a*Christo, #d1935-#tSurrounded islands
100 00#*a*Demetrius, #cof Phaleron, #db. 350 B.C.#tDe elocutione.#lRussian

A name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initial/letter, or open date.

- 100 10#*a*Savoskin, Anatolij Nikolajev#xBibliography
- 100 10#*a*Tatlin, Vladimir Evgrafovich,#d1885-1953.#tMonument to the Third International#xCopying
- 100 10#*a*Capote, Truman,#d1924- #xCriticism and interpretation
- 100 00#*a*Alexander,#cthe Great,#d356-323 B.C.#xArt

Spacing

Adjacent personal name initials/letters or an abbreviation for a name and an adjacent name or initial/letter are separated by one space.

- 100 10#*a*Hyatt, J. B.
- 100 10#*a*Flam, F. A.#q(Floyd A.)
- 100 10#*a*Enschedé, Ch. J.
- 100 10#*a*Gorbanev, R. V.#q(Rostislav Vasil'evich)

No spaces are used in initials/letters that do not represent personal names. An abbreviation consisting of more than a single letter is separated from preceding and succeeding words or initials/letters by one space.

- 100 00#*a*Cuthbert,#cFather, O.S.F.C.,#d1866-1939
- 100 10#*a*Sharma, S. K.,#cM.P.H.
- 100 10#*a*Brown, G. B.,#cPh. D.

A name portion containing an open-ended date ends with one space when it is followed by a subject subdivision portion or a subfield #k.

- 100 10#*a*Ford, Gerald R.,#d1913- #xAssassination attempt, 1975 (September 5)
- 100 10#*aa*Borges, Jorge Luis,#d1899- ,#kin fiction, drama, poetry, etc.
- 100 10#*a*Dalí, Salvador,#d1904- #tHomage to Goya

Display Constants

- [*dash associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z*]

The dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the machine-readable record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfields #x, #y, and #z.

Content designated field:

- 10#*a*Brunhoff, Jean de,#d1899-1937#xCharacters#xBabar

Display example:

Brunhoff, Jean de, 1899-1937-Characters-Babar

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

- 880 Alternate Graphic Representation
Tracing and Reference Fields-General Information

100 Heading—Personal Name (NR)**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a personal name used as a heading in either an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) or a reference record (008/09, code b or c). In an established heading record, field 100 contains the established form of a personal name. In a reference record, this field contains an unestablished form of a personal name.

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 100, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X00 Personal Names—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

- 100 00#*a*Manya K'Omalowete a Djonga,#d1950-
100 10#*a*Meyer
100 10#*a*Jones, James E.,#cJr.
100 10#*a*Soares, A. J.#q(António José)
100 10#*a*Senapati, Fakir Mohan,#d1843-1918.#tSelections.#lEnglish.#f1984
100 10#*a*Casadesus, Henri Gustave,#d1870-1947.#tConcertos,#mviolincello,
orchestra,#rC minor
100 20#*a*Vaughan Williams, Ralph,#d1872-1958
100 30#*a*Normandy, Dukes of
-

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X00 Personal Names—General Information

X10 Corporate Names—General Information

*National Level
Requirement*

110	Heading—Corporate Name (NR)	A
410	See From Tracing—Corporate Name (R)	A
510	See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name (R)	A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Type of corporate name entry element	M
0	Inverted name	A
1	Jurisdiction name	A
2	Name in direct order	A
<u>Second</u>	Nonfiling characters	M
0-9	Number of nonfiling characters present	M

Subfield Codes

<i>Name portion</i>		
#a	Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)	M
#b	Subordinate unit (R)	A
#c	Location of meeting (NR)	A
#d	Date of meeting or treaty signing (R)	A
#e	Relator term (R)	O
<i>Name and title portions</i>		
#g	Miscellaneous information (NR)	A
#k	Form subheading (R)	A
#n	Number of part/section/meeting (R)	A
<i>Title portion</i>		
#t	Title of a work (NR)	A
#f	Date of a work (NR)	A
#h	Medium (NR)	O
#l	Language of a work (NR)	A
#p	Name of part/section of a work (R)	A
#m	Medium of performance for music (R)	A
#o	Arranged statement for music (NR)	A
#r	Key for music (NR)	A
#s	Version (NR)	A
<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>		
#x	General subdivision (R)	A
#y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
#z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A

<i>Tracing and linking subfields</i>		
#i	Reference instruction phrase [410/510] (NR)	A
#w	Control subfield [410/510] (NR)	A
#5	Institution to which field applies [410/510] (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

The defined content designators identify the subelements occurring in corporate name headings constructed according to the generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR 2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH)) that are identified in 008/10 (Descriptive cataloging rules) or 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus). A corporate name, a form subheading, a title of a work, and/or a city section name entered under the name of a jurisdiction are X10 corporate names. A name of a jurisdiction that represents an ecclesiastical entity is an X10 corporate name. Other names of jurisdictions used alone or followed by subject subdivisions are geographic names and are contained in the X51 fields. A named meeting that is entered under a corporate name is contained in the X10 fields. A meeting entered directly under its own name is contained in the X11 fields. Corporate names used in phrase subject headings (e.g., Catholic Church in art) are contained in the X50 fields.

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Type of corporate name entry element

The first indicator position contains a value that identifies the form of the entry element of the heading. The values distinguish among an inverted name, a jurisdiction name, and a corporate name in direct order used as the entry element.

0 - Inverted name

Value 0 indicates that the corporate name begins with a personal name in inverted order (*surname, forename*).

410 00#aNewman (Jean and Dorothy) Industrial Relations Library
410 00#aNister (D.B.) & Associates

Corporate names beginning with a personal surname alone, a personal name in direct order (not inverted), or containing a personal name other than as the entry element are identified by value 2.

110 20#aField & Young (Jersey City, N.J.)
110 20#aNigel Brooks Chorale
110 20#aJ. Paul Getty Museum
110 20#aOrchestra Gelmini

1 - Jurisdiction name

Value 1 indicates that the entry element is a name of a jurisdiction that is also an ecclesiastical entity or is a jurisdiction name under which a corporate name, a city section, or a title of a work is entered.

- | 110 10#*a*Pennsylvania.*#b*State Board of Examiners of Nursing Home Administrators
- | 110 10#*a*Jalisco (Mexico).*#t*Ley que aprueba el plan regional urbano de Guadalajara, 1979-1983
- | 410 10#*a*Marseille (France : Diocese : Catholic Church)
- | 410 10#*a*Cambridge (Mass.).*#b*East Cambridge

Corporate names containing a name of a jurisdiction as an integral part of the name or qualified by a such a name are identified by value 2.

- | 110 20#*a*University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign.*#b*Experimental Music Studios
- | 110 20#*a*Arizona Family Planning Council
- | 110 20#*a*East Randolph Literary Society (Vt.)

2 - Name in direct order

Value 2 indicates that the name is in direct order. The heading may contain a parenthetical qualifier or may be an acronym or initialism.

- | 110 20#*a*Harvard University
- | 110 20#*a*National Gardening Association (U.S.)
- | 110 20#*a*PRONAPADE (Firm)

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the number of character positions associated with a definite or indefinite article (e.g., The, An) at the beginning of a heading to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

0 - No nonfiling characters present

Value 0 indicates that no initial article character positions are disregarded.

Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning of a heading that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

- | 110 20#*a*"I hai" pien chi pu

An initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the corporate name heading. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

- | 110 20#*a*Nur (Firm)
- | 410 20#*a*Al Noor Publishing

1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters present

A non-zero value indicates that the heading begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. A diacritical mark or special character associated with the article (but preceding the first actual filing character) is included in the count of nonfiling characters.

Because the omission of initial articles to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes is common practice, values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in an X10 field.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element

Subfield #a contains a name of a corporate body or the first entity when subordinate units are present; a jurisdiction name under which a corporate body, city section, or a title of a work is entered; or a jurisdiction name that is also an ecclesiastical entity. A parenthetical qualifying term, jurisdiction name, or date is not separately subfield coded.

- 110 20#aWinrock International Institute for Agricultural Development
- 110 20#aDiscovery (Ship)
- 110 20#aEmpire State Building (New York, N.Y.)
- 110 20#aUtkal University.#bPopulation Research Centre
- 110 10#aNotre-Dame de Laeken (Belgium : Parish)
- 110 10#aBritish Columbia.#bFish and Wildlife Branch
- 110 10#aSwitzerland.#tObligationenrecht (1911)

- 410 10#aNew York (N.Y.).#bGreenwich Village

#b - Subordinate unit

Subfield #b contains a name of a subordinate corporate unit, a name of a city section, or a name of meeting entered under a corporate or jurisdiction name.

- 110 10#aTexas.#bDept. of Human Services
- 110 20#aUniversity of Ife.#bDept. of Demography and Social Statistics
- 110 20#aLabour Party (Great Britain).#bConference#n(71st : #cBlackpool)

#c - Location of meeting

Subfield #c contains a place name or a name of an institution where a meeting was held. Multiple adjacent locations are contained in a single subfield #c.

- 110 20#aCatholic Church.#bConcilium Plenarium Americae Latinae
#d(1899 ;#cRome, Italy)
- 110 20#aDemocratic Party (Tex.).#bState Convention#d(1857 ;#cWaco)
- 110 10#aBotswana.#bDelegation to the Commonwealth Parliamentary Conference, 28th, 1982, Nassau, Bahamas
[Delegation to ... is not a named meeting; number, date, and place are not separately subfield coded.]

#d - Date of meeting or treaty signing

Subfield #d contains the date a meeting was held.

| 110 10#aN_ew Hampshire.#bConstitutional Convention#d(1781)

In a name/title X10 field, subfield #d also contains the date a treaty was signed.

110 10#aN_elgeria.#tTreaties, etc.#gEngland and Wales,#d1682 Apr. 20

#e - Relator term

Subfield #e contains a designation of function that describes the relationship between a name and a work.

110 20#aN_eastman Kodak Company,#edefendant-appellant

#f - Date of a work

Subfield #f contains a date of publication used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

110 20#aN_eRaleigh Publishing Company.#tWorks.#f1979

A date added parenthetically to a title to distinguish between identical titles entered under the same name is not separately subfield coded.

110 10#aN_eFrance.#tConstitution (1946)

#g - Miscellaneous information

Subfield #g contains a data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield.

In a heading for a meeting entered under a corporate body, subfield #g also contains a subelement that is not more appropriately contained in subfields #c, #d, or #n.

110 10#aN_eMinnesota.#bConstitutional Convention#d(1857 :#gRepublican)

In a name/title X10 field, subfield #g contains the name of intergovernmental agreements, etc.

110 10#aN_eGreat Britain.#tTreaties, etc.#g]
etc.#d1951 Mar. 6

#h - Medium

Subfield #h contains a media qualifier used.

110 20#aN_ePearls Before Swine (Musical gr
#hSound recording

X10

#i - Reference instruction phrase

Subfield #i contains a reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield #w (Control subfield). Subfield #i is appropriate only in the 410 See From Tracing and 510 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #i are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

#k - Form subheading

Subfield #k contains a form subheading. A form subheading may occur in either the name or the title portion of an X10 field. Form subheadings used with corporate names include *Manuscript*; *Protocols, etc.*; and *Selections*.

- 110 20#aBritish Library.#kManuscript.#nArundel 384
110 10#aFrance.#tTreaties, etc.#gPoland,#d1948 Mar. 2.#kProtocols,
etc.#d1951 Mar. 6
110 20#aLibrary of Congress.#bCongressional Research Service.#bSenior
Specialist Division.#tSoviet diplomacy and negotiating behavior.
#lJapanese.#kSelections

#l - Language of a work

Subfield #l contains the name of a language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

- 110 20#aBanco Central de Venezuela.#tProcedimiento para la obtención de
divisas del mercado controlado para el pago de importaciones a
través de cartas de crédito.#lEnglish & Spanish

#m - Medium of performance for music

Subfield #m contains term(s) designating the medium of performance used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading. This subfield code is defined for consistency in the 1XX fields. *Subfield #m is unlikely to be used in an X10 field.*

#n - Number of part/section/meeting

Subfield #n contains the *number of a meeting* that is entered under a corporate name.

- 110 10#aUnited States.#bCongress#n(97th, 2nd session :#d1982).#bHouse

Subfield #n also contains a *number* designation for a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title heading. "Numbering" is defined as an indication of sequencing in any form, e.g., Part 1, Supplement A, Book two.

- | 110 10#aItaly.#tRegio decreto-legge 20 luglio 1934,#nn. 1404.#lGerman
110 20#aCorpus Christi College (University of Cambridge).#bLibrary.
#kManuscript.#n57
110 10#aPhilippines.#tLabor Code of the Philippines.#nBook 5,#pLabor
Relations
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

Multiple alternative numberings for a part/section (usually separated by commas) are contained in a single subfield $\#n$.

110 20 $\#a$ Montevergne (Abbey). $\#b$ Biblioteca. $\#k$ Manuscript. $\#n$ Scassale XXIII,
171

$\#o$ - Arranged statement for music

Subfield $\#o$ contains the abbreviation *arr.* used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading. This subfield is defined for consistency in the 1XX fields. *Subfield $\#o$ is unlikely to be used in an X10 field.*

$\#p$ - Name of part/section of a work

Subfield $\#p$ contains a *name* designation of a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title heading.

110 10 $\#a$ United States. $\#t$ Constitution. $\#p$ Preamble
110 20 $\#a$ United States Strategic Bombing Survey. $\#t$ Reports. $\#p$ Pacific war
110 10 $\#a$ Ecuador. $\#t$ Plan Nacional de Desarrollo, 1980-1984. $\#n$ Parte 1,
 $\#p$ Grandes objetivos nacionales. $\#l$ English
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

Subfield $\#p$ also contains a name designation following the form subdivision *Manuscript*.

110 20 $\#a$ New York Public Library. $\#k$ Manuscript. $\#p$ Aulendorf Codex

$\#r$ - Key for music

Subfield $\#r$ contains the statement of key used in a uniform title for a work in a name/title heading. This subfield is defined for consistency in the 1XX fields. *Subfield $\#r$ is unlikely to be used in an X10 field.*

$\#s$ - Version

Subfield $\#s$ contains version, edition, etc., information used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

110 20 $\#a$ American Library Association. $\#b$ Bookdealer-Library Relations Committee. $\#t$ Acquisitions guidelines $\#s$ (2nd ed.)

$\#t$ - Title of a work

Subfield $\#t$ contains a uniform title, a title page title of a work, or a series title used in a name/title heading.

110 10 $\#a$ Venezuela. $\#t$ Control de cambio no. 3. $\#l$ English & Spanish
110 10 $\#a$ United States. $\#t$ Treaties, etc.

Additional examples are under the descriptions of subfields $\#f$, $\#k$, $\#l$, $\#n$, and $\#p$.

X10

#w - Control subfield [410/510]

Subfield $\#w$ contains up to four character positions (designated as $\#w/0$, $\#w/1$, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield $\#w$ is appropriate only in the 410 See From Tracing and 510 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield $\#w$ are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

#x - General subdivision

Subfield $\#x$ contains a subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfields $\#y$ (Chronological subdivision) or $\#z$ (Geographic subdivision). Subfield $\#x$ is appropriate in the X10 fields only when a general topical or form subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

110 20#aLutheran Church#xD doctrines#xEarly works to 1800

#y - Chronological subdivision

Subfield $\#y$ contains a subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield $\#y$ is appropriate in the X10 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

110 10#aUnited States.#bArmy#xRecruiting, enlistment, etc.#yCivil War,
1861-1865, [World War, 1914-1918, etc.]

110 20#aHarvard University#xHistory#yRevolution, 1775-1783

#z - Geographic subdivision

Subfield $\#z$ contains a geographic subject subdivision. Subfield $\#z$ is appropriate in the X10 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

110 20#aCatholic Church#zGermany#xHistory#y1933-1945

#5 - Institution to which field applies [410/510]

Subfield $\#5$ contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added a tracing field to a national authority file record. Subfield $\#5$ is appropriate only in the 410 See From Tracing and 510 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield $\#5$ are provided in the *Tracings and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

#6 - Linkage

Subfield $\#6$ contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield $\#6$ and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings

The following categories are corporate names:

Abbeys	Ecclesiastical entities that are also names of places, e.g., Basel (Switzerland : Ecclesiastical principality)
Academics	Educational institutions
Airplanes, Named	Embassies
Almshouses	Exhibition buildings
Apartment houses	Experiment stations
Armories	
Artificial satellites	
Asylums (Charitable institutions)	
Auditoriums	
Banks	Factories
Bars	Ferry buildings
Boards of trade (Chambers of commerce)	Fire stations
Broadcasting stations	Funds
Buildings, Private	Funeral homes, mortuaries
Buildings occupied by corporate bodies	
Bus terminals	Galleries
	Grain elevators
Capitols	Groups of industries, Named
Castles	Gymnasiums
Cathedrals	
Churches (in use or in ruins)	Halfway houses
City halls	Homes
City sections (entered subordinately)	Hospitals
Civic centers	Hotels
Club houses	Houses (Structures)
Coal ash sites	
Coliseums	Immigration stations
Collections, Public or Private	Industrial groups, Named
Colleges	
Communication satellites	Laboratories
Community centers	Libraries
Concert halls	Lighthouses
Conglomerate corporations, Asian	
Convention centers	Manors
Convents	Mansions
Correctional institutions	Market buildings
Court houses	Markets
Crematories	Mills
Custom houses	Mine buildings
	Mints
Dance halls	Monasteries
Denominations, Religious (individual)	Morgues
Dispensaries	Mortuaries
Dwellings	Motels
	Movie theaters
	Museums
	Music halls

X10

Night clubs	Sanatoriums
Nuclear power stations	School districts
Nursing homes	Schools
Observatories	Service stations
Office buildings	Shipyards
Official residences	Shopping centers
Old age homes	Spas
Opera houses	Sports arenas
Orders of Knighthood	Stadiums
Orphanages	Stock exchanges
Pagodas	Stores, Retail
Palaces	Studies (Research projects)
Plans (Programs)	Temples (in use or in ruins)
Police stations	Terminal buildings
Poorhouses	Theater buildings
Port authorities	Theater companies
Post offices	Tribes (as legal entities only)
Power plants	Undertakers
Presidential mansions	Universities
Prisons	Villas
Programs	Warehouses
Projects	Zaibatsu
Public comfort stations	
Racetracks	
Railroads	
Railway stations	
Resorts	
Restaurants	

Punctuation

The punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify USMARC punctuation practices.

An X10 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 110 20#aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency
110 20#aMartin Marietta Corporation.#bEnvironmental Center
110 10#aBihar (India).#tBihar Panchayat Raj Act, 1947
110 20#aVerlag Netto-Marktpreiskatalog "Austria"
110 20#aWestern Map and Publishing Co.
110 10#aUnited States.#bCongress#n(87th :#d1961-1962)
410 20#aC.I.M.A.
410 20#aFinnish Relief Fund, inc.

The name portion of a name/subordinate body or name/title heading ends with a mark of punctuation. The mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark.

- 110 10#*a*Boston (Mass.).#tLaws, etc.
 410 20#*a*Catholic Church.#bPope (1978- : John Paul II).#tOpen the doors to the
 Redeemer
 X10 20#*a*Casa de la Cultura Ecuatoriana "Benjamín Carrión."#bSección de Ciencias
 Biológicas

A name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initialism, or open date.

- 110 20#*a*Society of Friends#zPennsylvania#xHistory

Spacing

No spaces are used in initialisms or personal name initials.

- 110 20#*a*Brotherhood of Railway Trainmen (U.S.).#bMinnesota State Legislative
 Board
 110 20#*a*Metallurgical Society of AIME.#bNew Jersey Chapter
 110 20#*a*Guru Ram Dass P.G. School of Planning
 110 20#*a*Confédération Iranischer Studenten (N.U.)
 410 20#*a*CIMA
 410 20#*a*D.B. Lister and Associates

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

An open-ended date ends with a space when it is followed by other data.

- 110 20#*a*Scientific Society of San Antonio (1904-)

Display Constants

- [dash associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z]

The dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z.

Content designated field:

- 110 20#*a*Lutheran Church#xDiscernments#xEarly works to 1800

Display example:

Lutheran Church—Doctrines—Early works to 1800

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

110 Heading—Corporate Name (NR)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a corporate name used as a heading in either an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) or a reference record (008/09, code b or c). In an established heading record, field 110 contains the established form of a corporate name. In a reference record, this field contains an unestablished form of a corporate name.

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 110, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X10 Corporate Names—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

- 110 10#*a*Constantinople (Ecumenical patriarchate)
 - 110 10#*a*Venezuela.*b*Fuerza Aérea Venezolana
 - 110 20#*a*Association for Childhood Education International.*b*Summer Seminar
 #d(1980 :*c*Taipei, Taiwan)
 - 110 10#*a*Argentina.*t*Ley no. 20,771
 - 110 10#*a*United States.*t*Truth in Lending Act (1980)
 - 110 10#*a*England and Wales.*t*Treaties, etc.*#g*Savoy (Duchy),*#d*1669 Sept. 19
 - 110 10#*a*Mexico.*t*Treaties, etc.*#g*United States,*#d*1944 Feb. 3.*#k*Protocols,
etc.,*#d*1944 Nov. 14
 - 110 20#*a*Real Academia de la Historia (Spain).*#k*Manuscript.*#n*H
 - 110 20#*a*Alcazar (Madrid, Spain)
 - 110 20#*a*Everett Literary Association (Brooklyn, New York, N.Y.)
 - 110 20#*a*Yale University.*b*Dept. of Manuscripts and Archives
 - 110 20#*a*Touring club italiano.*b*Servizio cartografico.*t*Carta stradale
d'Europa
 - 110 20#*a*Catholic Church*#x*History*#y*Modern period, 1500-
-

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X10 Corporate Names—General Information

X11 Meeting Names—General Information

*National Level
Requirement*

111	Heading—Meeting Name (NR)	A
411	See From Tracing—Meeting Name (R)	A
511	See Also From Tracing—Meeting Name (R)	A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Type of meeting name entry element	M
0	Inverted name	A
1	Jurisdiction name	A
2	Name in direct order	A
<u>Second</u>	Nonfiling characters	M
0-9	Number of nonfiling characters present	M

Subfield Codes

<i>Name portion</i>		
#a	Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)	M
#q	Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)	A
#d	Date of meeting (NR)	A
#c	Location of meeting (NR)	A
#e	Subordinate unit (R)	A
#g	Miscellaneous information (NR)	A
<i>Name and title portions</i>		
#n	Number of part/section/meeting (R)	A
<i>Title portion</i>		
#t	Title of a work (NR)	A
#f	Date of a work (NR)	A
#h	Medium (NR)	O
#k	Form subheading (R)	A
#l	Language of a work (NR)	A
#p	Name of part/section of a work (R)	A
#s	Version (NR)	A
<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>		
#x	General subdivision (R)	A
#y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
#z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A

<i>Tracing and linking subfields</i>		
#i	Reference instruction phrase [411/511] (NR)	A
#w	Control subfield [411/511] (NR)	A
#5	Institution to which field applies [411/511] (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

The content designators identify the subelements occurring in meeting name headings constructed according to the generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR 2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH)) that are identified in 008/10 (Descriptive cataloging rules) or 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus). A named meeting that is entered under a corporate name is contained in the X10 fields. Corporate names that include such words as *conference* or *congress* are also contained in the X10 fields. For example, the Congress of Neurological Surgeons, a professional group, is a corporate name.

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Type of meeting name entry element

The first indicator position contains a value that identifies the form of the entry element of the heading. The values distinguish among an inverted personal name, a jurisdiction name, and a meeting name in direct order used as the entry element.

0 - Inverted name

Value 0 indicates that the meeting name begins with a personal name in inverted order (*surname, forename*).

411 00#*a*Smith (David Nichol) Memorial Seminar

Meeting names beginning with a personal surname alone, a personal name in direct order (not inverted), or containing a personal name other than as the entry element are identified by value 2.

111 20#*a*Symposium Internacional "Manuel Pedroso" In Memoriam
#d(1976 :#cGuanajuato, Mexico)

111 20#*a*Wittenberg University Luther Symposium#d(1983)
411 20#*a*Martin Luther Symposium#d(1983 :#cWittenburg University)

1 - Jurisdiction name

Value 1 indicates that the entry element is a jurisdiction name under which a meeting name is entered. This construction is not used in AACR 2 formulated 111 Heading or 511 See Also From Tracing fields. It may occur in 411 See From Tracing fields.

411 10#*wa*Venice (Italy).#qInternational Biennial Exhibition of Art

Meeting names containing a jurisdiction name as an integral part of the name or qualified by a place name are identified by value 2.

111 20#aNation-wide Conference of the Women of Afghanistan
#d(1980 :#cKabul, Afghanistan)

411 20#aBrussels Hemoglobin Symposium

2 - Name in direct order

Value 2 indicates that the name is in direct order. The heading may contain a parenthetical qualifier or may be an acronym or initialism.

111 20#aIASTED International Symposium
111 20#aSymposium (International) on Combustion
111 20#aGovernor's Conference on Aging (N.Y.)#d(1982 :#cAlbany)
111 20#aEsto '84#d(1984 :#cToronto, Ont.).#eRaamatunäituse Komitee
111 20#aInternational Congress of Romance Linguistics and Philology
#n(17th :#d1983 :#cAix-en-Provence, France).#tActes du XVIIème
Congrès international de linguistique et philologie romanes
111 20#aCongresso Brasileiro de Publicações

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the number of character positions associated with a definite or indefinite article (e.g., The, An) at the beginning of a heading that are disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

0 - No nonfiling characters present

Value 0 indicates that no initial article character positions are disregarded.

Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning of a heading that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

111 20#a"Foro sobre el Pueblo Guaymí y su Futuro"#d(1981 :#cPanama,
Panama)
111 20#aÖsterreichischer Juristentag.#eArbeitsgemeinschaft
Konsumentenschutz

An initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the meeting name heading. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

111 20#aLa Crosse Health and Sports Science Symposium

1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters present

A non-zero value indicates that the heading begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. A diacritical mark or special character associated with the article (but preceding the first actual filing character) is included in the count of nonfiling characters.

Because the omission of initial articles to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes is common practice, values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in an X11 field.

X11

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element

Subfield #a contains a name of a meeting or a jurisdiction name under which a meeting is entered. Parenthetical qualifying information is not separately subfield coded. Meeting names are not entered under jurisdiction names in AACR 2 formulated 111 Heading or 511 See Also From Tracing fields. This construction may occur in 411 See From Tracing fields.

111 20#aInternational Conference on Numerical Methods in Geomechanics
411 20#aGeomechanics, International Conference on Numerical Methods in

411 10#aVenice (Italy).#qInternational Biennial Exhibition of Art

#c - Location of meeting

Subfield #c contains a place name or a name of an institution where a meeting was held.

111 20#aWorkshop on Primary Health Care#d(1983 :#cKavieng, Papua New Guinea)
111 20#aConference on Philosophy and Its History#d(1983 :#cUniversity of Lancaster)

Multiple adjacent locations are contained in a single subfield #c.

111 20#aWorld Peace Conference#n(1st :#d1949 :#cParis, France and Prague, Czechoslovakia)

#d - Date of meeting

Subfield #d contains the date a meeting was held.

111 20#aColloquio franco-italiano di Aosta#d(1982)
111 20#aSymposium on Finite Element Methods in Geotechnical Engineering #d(1972 :#cVicksburg, Miss.)
111 20#aSpecial Conference on the Chinese Customs Tariff#d(1925-1926 :#cPeking, China)

A date added parenthetically to a meeting name to distinguish between identical names is not separately subfield coded.

111 20#aInternational Symposium on Quality Control (1974-)

#e - Subordinate unit

Subfield #e contains a name of a subordinate unit entered under a meeting name.

111 20#aIllinois White House Conference on Children#d(1980 :#cSpringfield, Ill.).#eChicago Regional Committee
111 20#aStour Music Festival.#eOrchestra
111 20#aWhite House Conference on Library and Information Services #d(1979 :#cWashington, D.C.).#eOhio Conference Delegation

#f - Date of a work

Subfield #f contains a date of publication used with a collective uniform title in a name/title heading.

111 20#aHybrid Corn Industry Research Conference.#tWorks.#f1980

A date added parenthetically to a title to distinguish between identical titles entered under the same name is not separately subfield coded.

111 20#aInternational Symposium on Quality Control (1974-)

#g - Miscellaneous information

Subfield #g contains a data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield. Such information is not used in AACR 2 formulated X11 heading fields. It may occur in pre-AACR 2 X11 headings that contain the parenthetical phrase *Projected, not held*.

111 20#aSymposium on Nonsteady Fluid Dynamics,#cSan Francisco,#d1978
#g(Projected, not held)

#h - Medium

Subfield #h contains a media qualifier used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

#i - Reference instruction phrase

Subfield #i contains a reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield #w (Control subfield). Subfield #i is appropriate only in the 411 See From Tracing and 511 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #i are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

#k - Form subheading

Subfield #k contains a form subheading used with a title of a work in a name/title heading. The term *Selections* is a form subheading used with meeting names.

111 20#aInternational Conference on Safety of Life at Sea#d(1960 :
#cLondon, England).#tFinal act of conference with annexes including
the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, signed
in London, 17 June, 1960.#lChinese & English.#kSelections

#l - Language of a work

Subfield #l contains the name of the language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) of a work in a name/title heading.

111 20#aBiennale di Venezia#d(1980).#eSettore arti visive.#tCatalogo
generale 1980.#lEnglish

X11

#n - Number of part/section/meeting

Subfield **#n** contains the *number of a meeting*.

111 20#*a*Asian Games#n(9th :#d1982 :#cDelhi, India).#eSpecial Organising Committee

Subfield **#n** also contains a *number* designation for a part/section of a work. "Numbering" is defined as an indication of sequencing in any form, e.g., Part 1, Supplement A, Book two.

411 20#*a*Vatican Council#n(2nd :#d1962-1965).#tConstitutio pastoralis de ecclesia in mundo huius temporis.#n46-52.#pDe dignitate matrimonii et familiae fovenda

[*Part/section is both numbered and named.*]

#p - Name of part/section of a work

Subfield **#p** contains a *name* designation of a part/section of a work in a name/title heading.

111 20#*a*International Conference on Gnosticism#d(1978 :#cNew Haven, Conn.).#tRediscovery of Gnosticism.#pModern writers

111 20#*a*Conference on the Limitation of Armament#d(1921-1922 : #cWashington, D.C.).#tWashington Kaigi keika.#n1.#pGunbi seigen ni kansuru mondai

[*Part/section is both numbered and named.*]

#q - Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element

Subfield **#q** contains a meeting name that is entered under a jurisdiction name contained in subfield **#a**. This construction is not used in AACR 2 formulated 111 Heading or 511 See Also From Tracing fields. It may occur in 411 See From Tracing fields.

411 10#*a*Venice (Italy).#qInternational Biennial Exhibition of Art

#s - Version

Subfield **#s** contains version, edition, etc., information added to a title of a work in a name/title heading. This subfield code is defined for consistency in the 1XX fields. *Subfield #s is unlikely to be used in an X11 field.*

#t - Title of a work

Subfield **#t** contains a uniform title, a title page title of a work, or a series title used in a name/title heading.

111 20#*a*Vatican Council#n(2nd :#d1962-1965).#tDecretum de presbyterorum ministerio et vita

Additional examples are in the descriptions of subfields #f, #k, #l, #n, and #p.

#w - Control subfield [411/511]

Subfield #w contains up to four character positions (designated as #w/0, #w/1, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield #w is appropriate only in the 411 See From Tracing and 511 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield #w are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

#x - General subdivision

Subfield #x contains a subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield #y (Chronological subdivision) or #z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield #x is appropriate in the X11 fields only when a general topical or form subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

- 111 20#aPurdue Pest Control Conference#xPeriodicals
- 111 20#aInternational Congress of Writers for the Defence of Culture#n(1st :
#d1935 :#cParis, France)#xFiction
- 111 20#aCouncil of Trent#d(1545-1563)#xControversial literature#xEarly works
to 1800

#y - Chronological subdivision

Subfield #y contains a subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield #y is appropriate in the X11 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

#z - Geographic subdivision

Subfield #z contains a geographic subject subdivision. Subfield #z is appropriate in the X11 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

| **#5 - Institution to which field applies [411/511]**

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added a tracing field to a national authority file record. Subfield #5 is appropriate only in the 411 See From Tracing and 511 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #5 are provided in the *Tracings and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

| **#6 - Linkage**

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields to each other. It contains the tag number of an associated description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying subfield #6 are provided in the *Representation* section.

X11

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings

The following categories are meeting names:

Colloquia	Seminars
Exhibitions	Shows (Exhibitions)
Expeditions, Scientific	Symposia
Expositions	Workshops
Fairs	
Festivals (formally organized)	

Punctuation

The punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify USMARC punctuation practices.

An X11 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

111 20#*a*Convegno Santa Caterina in Finalborgo#n(1980 :#cCivico museo del Finale)

The name portion of a name/title heading ends with a mark of punctuation.

111 20#*a*International Congress of the History of Art#n(24th :#d1979 :#cBologna, Italy).#tAtti del XXIV Congresso internazionale di storia dell'arte

A mark of punctuation occurring with a closing quotation mark is placed inside the quotation mark.

111 20#*a*Simposio "Antropólogos y Misioneros: Posiciones Incompatibles?"#d(1985 :#cBogota, Colombia)

A name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initialism, or open date.

111 20#*a*Vatican Council#n(2nd :#d1962-1965).#tActa synodalia Sacrosancti Concilii Oecumenici Vaticani II#xIndexes

111 20#*a*Council of Constantinople#n(1st :#d381)#xPoetry

Spacing

No spaces are used in initialisms or personal name initials/letters.

- 111 20#J.J. Sylvester Symposium on Algebraic Geometry#d(1976 :#cJohns Hopkins University)
- 111 20#Woman's Rights Convention#n(1st :#d1948 :#cSeneca Falls, N.Y.)
- 111 20#Olympic Games#n(22nd :#d1980 :#cMoscow, R.S.F.S.R.)
- 111 20#International SEG Meeting
- 411 20#S.E.G. Meeting

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

An open-ended date ends with a space when it is followed by other data.

- 111 20#International Symposium on Quality Control (1974-)

Display Constant

- [*dash associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z*]

The dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z.

Content designated field:

- 111 20#Purdue Pest Control Conference#xPeriodicals

Display example:

Purdue Pest Control Conference—Periodicals

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

#b Number [OBSOLETE]

In 1980, the definition of subfield #n was expanded to include meeting numbers and subfield #b was made obsolete. Records created before this change may contain the number of the meeting in subfield #b.

111 Heading—Meeting Name (NR)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a meeting name used as a heading in either an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) or a reference record (008/09, code b or c). In an established heading record, field 111 contains the established form of a meeting name. In a reference record, this field contains an unestablished form of a meeting name.

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 111, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X11 Meeting Names—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

- 111 20#aEuropean Congress of Biopharmaceutics and Pharmacokinetics
 - 111 20#aCentennial Exhibition#d(1876 :#cPhiladelphia, Pa.)
 - 111 20#aInternational Institute on the Prevention and Treatment of Alcoholism#n(26th #d1980 :#cCardiff, South Glamorgan).#eEducation Section
 - 111 20#aUnited Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea#n(3rd :#d1973-1982 :#cNew York, N.Y., etc.)#eDelegations
 - 111 20#aInternational Purdue Workshop on Industrial Computer Systems.#eMan/Machine Interface Committee
 - 111 20#aConference on the Dynamics of Human Settlement Systems#n(1976 :#cInternational Institute for Applied Systems Analysis)
 - 111 20#aWorkshop on Nuclear Physics with Stored, Cooled Beams#d(1984 :#cSpencer, Ind.)
 - 111 20#aGeophysical Symposium#n(21st :#d1976 :#cLeipzig, Germany)#tProceedings. #kSelections
-

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X11 Meeting Names—General Information

X30 Uniform Titles—General Information

*National Level
Requirement*

130	Heading—Uniform Title (NR)	A
430	See From Reference—Uniform Title (R)	A
530	See Also From Reference—Uniform Title (R)	A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Nonfiling characters	M
0-9	Number of nonfiling characters present	M

Subfield Codes

<i>Title portion</i>		
#a	Uniform title (NR)	M
#n	Number of part/section of a work (R)	A
#p	Name of part/section of a work (R)	A
#l	Language of a work (NR)	A
#f	Date of a work (NR)	A
#k	Form subheading (R)	A
#s	Version (NR)	A
#d	Date of treaty signing (R)	A
#h	Medium (NR)	O
#m	Medium of performance for music (R)	A
#o	Arranged statement for music (NR)	A
#r	Key for music (NR)	A
#g	Miscellaneous information (NR)	A
#t	Title of a work (NR)	A
<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>		
#x	General subdivision (R)	A
#y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
#z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A
<i>Tracing and linking subfields</i>		
#i	Reference instruction phrase [430/530] (NR)	A
#w	Control subfield [430/530] (NR)	A
#5	Institution to which field applies [430/530] (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

The content designators identify the subelements occurring in uniform or conventional title, title page title, or series title headings that are not entered under a name heading and that are constructed according to the generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR 2)*, *Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)*) that are identified in 008/10 (Descriptive cataloging rules) or 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus). A uniform title heading is used to bring together bibliographic entries for a work when various issues have appeared under different titles and to provide identification for a work when the title by which it is known differs from the title proper of a particular issue or when different publications have identical titles. A uniform title entered under a name is contained in subfield #1 (Title of a work) in the field appropriate for the author's name (X00, X10, X11). Uniform titles used in phrase subject headings (e.g., Bible in atheism) are contained in the X50 fields.

■ INDICATORS**First Indicator - Undefined**

The first indicator position is undefined and contains a blank ().

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the number of character positions associated with a definite or indefinite article (e.g., Lc, An) at the beginning of a uniform title heading that are disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

0 - No nonfiling characters present

Value 0 indicates that no initial article character positions are disregarded.

Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning of a uniform title heading that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

130 0#*a*"Hsüan lai hsi kan" hsi lieh
130 0#*a*Elektroshlakový pereplav

An initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the uniform title heading. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

130 0#*a*Bastard
[Full title is *Der Bastard*.]

1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters present

A non-zero value indicates that a heading begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. A diacritical mark or special character associated with the article (but preceding the first actual filing character) is included in the count of nonfiling characters.

Because the omission of initial articles to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes is common practice, values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in an X30 field.

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Uniform title

Subfield #a contains a uniform title. Parenthetical information is separately subfield coded in one instance: the date of signing added to a uniform title of a treaty is contained in subfield #d.

- 130 \$0#aHabakkuk commentary
- 130 \$0#aBeowulf
- 130 \$0#aCodex Brucianus
- 130 \$0#aResources information series
- 130 \$0#aImago (Series)
- 130 \$0#aRecherches (Sand (Firm))
- 130 \$0#aSocialist thought and practice (Belgrade, Serbia)
- 130 \$0#aEconomia (Franco Angeli editore : 1985)
- 130 \$0#aNoticias de Macau
- 130 \$0#aInter-American Treaty of Reciprocal Assistance#d(1947)
[Parenthetical date of treaty signing is contained in subfield #d.]

#d - Date of treaty signing

Subfield #d contains the date of signing used in a uniform title heading for a treaty or other intergovernmental agreement.

- 130 \$0#aBonn Convention#d(1952)
- 430 \$0#aBonner Vertrag#d(1952)

#f - Date of a work

Subfield #f contains a date of publication used in a uniform title heading.

- 130 \$0#aBible.#lLatin.#sVulgate.#f1454?
- 130 \$0#aTosefta.#lEnglish.#f1977

A date added parenthetically to distinguish between identical uniform titles is not separately subfield coded.

- 130 \$0#aNew-York statesman (1823)

#g - Miscellaneous information

Subfield #g contains a data element used in a uniform title heading that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield. Such information is not used in AACR 2 formulated 130 Heading or 530 See Also From Tracing fields. It may occur in a pre-AACR 2 formulated headings in 430 See From Tracing fields.

- 430 \$0#wnnaa#aBible.#gManuscripts, Latin.#pN.T.#pGospels (Lindisfarne gospels)

X30

#h - Medium

Subfield #h contains a media qualifier used in a uniform title heading.

130 \$0#aGone with the wind (Motion picture).#hSound recording

#i - Reference instruction phrase

Subfield #i contains a reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield #w (Control subfield). Subfield #i is appropriate only in the 430 See From Tracing and 530 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #i are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

#k - Form subheading

Subfield #k contains a form subheading used in a uniform title heading. Form subheadings used with uniform titles include *Manuscript*, *Protocols*, etc., and *Selections*.

130 \$0#aBible.#pO.T.#pFive Scrolls.#lHebrew.#sBiblioteca Vaticana.#kManuscript.
+nUrbaniti 1

130 \$0#aConvention for the Protection of Human Rights and Fundamental
Freedoms#d(1950).#kProtocols, etc.

130 \$0#aPortrait and biographical album of Isabella County, Mich.#kSelections

130 \$0#aVedas.#pRgveda.#lItalian & Sanskrit.#kSelections

#l - Language of a work

Subfield #l contains the name of the language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) of a work used in a uniform title heading.

130 \$0#aKhimiâ i tekhnologîâ vody.#lEnglish

130 \$0#aLord's prayer.#lPolyglot

130 \$0#aTreaty on the Non-proliferation of Nuclear Weapons#d(1968).#lSpanish

130 \$0#aAvesta.#pVendidad.#lPahlavi & Avesta.#kSelections

#m - Medium of performance for music

Subfield #m contains term(s) designating the medium of performance used in a uniform title heading.

130 \$0#aConcertos,#mviolin, string orchestra,#rD major
[Uniform title heading used for a work having doubtful authorship.]

#n - Number of part/section of a work

Subfield #n contains a *number* designation for a part/section of a work used in a uniform title heading. "Numbering" is defined as an indication of sequencing in any form, e.g., Part 1, Supplement A, Book two. In music titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number is contained in subfield #n.

- 130 \$0#*a*English lute-songs.#nSeries 1
 130 \$0#*a*Bulletin.#nSeries B (Association of Washington Cities)
 130 \$0#*a*Annale (Universiteit van Stellenbosch).#nSerie A2,#pSoologie
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

A part/section designation that is an inversion of a named part that includes a number or a named part that includes chapter and/or verse numbers is contained in subfield #p.

- 130 \$0#*a*Bible.#pN.T.#pCorinthians, 1st
 430 \$0#*a*Bible.#pO.T.#pExodus XX, 2-17

#o - Arranged statement for music

Subfield #o contains the abbreviation *arr.* used in a uniform title heading.

- 130 \$0#*a*God save the king;#oarr.

#p - Name of part/section of a work

Subfield #p contains a *name* designation of a part/section used in a uniform title heading.

- 130 \$0#*a*Questões internacionais.#pSérie Estudos
 130 \$0#*a*Recherches morales.#pDocuments
 130 \$0#*a*Talmud Ycrushalmi.#pNezikin.#lGerman.#kSelections
 130 \$0#*a*Statistical bulletin (Bamako, Mali).#pSupplement
 130 \$0#*a*American Convention on Human Rights#d(1969).#nPart 2,
#pMeans of Protection.#lSpanish
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

A named part that indicates a subpart to the first noted part/section is contained in a separate subfield #p.

- 130 \$0#*a*Biblioteca Francisco Javier Clavijero.#pSerie menor.#pColección
Fuentes para el estudio de la historia del movimiento obrero mexicano
 130 \$0#*a*Bible.#pN.T.#pPhilippians.#lEnglish.#sRevised Standard.#f1980
 430 \$0#*a*Bible.#pN.T.#pMatthew VI, 9-13

#r - Key for music

Subfield #r contains the statement of key used in a uniform title heading.

- 130 \$0#*a*Concertos,#mviolin, string orchestra,#rD major

X30

#s - Version

Subfield #s contains version, edition, etc., information used in a uniform title heading.

130 \$0#aBible.\$!English.\$sAuthorized

130 \$0#aBible.\$pN.T.\$pLuke.\$!Greek.\$sCodex Sinaiticus

#t - Title of a work

Subfield #t contains a title page title of a work. This subfield code is defined for consistency in the 1XX fields. Subfield #t is unlikely to be used in an X30 field.

#w - Control subfield [430/530]

Subfield #w contains up to four character positions (designated as #w/0, #w/1, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield #w is appropriate only in the 430 See From Tracing and 530 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield #w are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

#x - General subdivision

Subfield #x contains a subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield #y (Chronological subdivision) or #z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield #x is appropriate in the X30 fields only when a general topical or form subject subdivision is added to a uniform title heading to form an extended subject heading.

130 \$0#aNytimes (New York, N.Y. : 1857)\$xIndexes

130 \$0#aTriple Alliance, 1882\$xCaricatures and cartoons

130 \$0#aBeowulf\$xLanguage\$xGlossaries, etc.

130 \$0#aTripitaka.\$pSūtrapitaka.\$pTantras\$xCommentaries
\$xEarly works to 1800

#y - Chronological subdivision

Subfield #y contains a subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield #y is appropriate in the X30 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a uniform title heading to form an extended subject heading.

130 \$0#aKoran\$xCriticism, interpretation, etc.\$xHistory\$y19th century

#z - Geographic subdivision

Subfield #z contains a geographic subject subdivision. Subfield #z is appropriate in the X30 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a uniform title heading to form an extended subject heading.

130 \$0#aBible\$zGermany

| **#5 - Institution to which field applies [430/530]**

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added a tracing field to a national authority file record. Subfield #5 is appropriate only in the 430 See From Tracing and 530 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #5 are provided in the *Tracings and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

| **#6 - Linkage**

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

INPUT CONVENTIONS**Ambiguous Headings**

The following categories are uniform titles when they are established under title:

Comic strips
Computer programs
Motion pictures

Radio programs
Software, Computer
Television programs

Punctuation

The punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify USMARC punctuation practices.

An X30 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 130 \$0#*a*Ten commandments
- 130 \$0#*a*God save the king;#oarr.
- 130 \$0#*a*Talmud#xGlossaries, vocabularies, etc.
- 130 \$0#*a*Publicación miscelánea (Inter-American Institute for Cooperation on Agriculture)
- 130 \$0#*a*Bible.#lEnglish.#sRevised Standard.#f1961?
- 430 \$0#*a*Pax et bonum, Ed.

A mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark.

- 530 \$0#*wb#**a*Publicaciones del Archivo Histórico de la Provincia de Buenos Aires "Ricardo Levene."#nIII,#pDocumentos del archivo

X30

A uniform title heading followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the title ends with an abbreviation or an initialism.

- 130 \$0#*a*United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods#*d*(1980)#*x*Congresses
130 \$0#*a*Book of Mormon#*x*Antiquities
130 \$0#*a*Bible.#*p*N.T.#*x*Criticism, interpretation, etc.

Spacing

No spaces are used in initialisms.

- 130 \$0#*a*CORPS (computing, organizations, policy, and society) series
130 \$0#*a*Bible.#*p*N.T.#*p*Matthew

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

- 130 \$0#*a*Mineral resources series (Morgantown, W. Va.)

Display Constant

- [*dash associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z*]

The dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #x, #y, or #z.

Content designated field:

- 130 \$0#*a*Beowulf#*x*Language#*x*Glossaries, etc.

Display example:

Beowulf-Language-Glossaries, etc.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Tracing and Reference Fields-General Information

130 Heading—Uniform Title (NR)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a uniform title used as a heading in either an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) or a reference record (008/09, code b or c). In an established heading record, field 130 contains the established form of a uniform title. In a reference record, this field contains an unestablished form of a uniform title.

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 130, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X30 Uniform Titles—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

- 130 \$0#aA l'épreuve
 - 130 \$0#aOptiques—Hazan
 - 130 \$0#aPublicação da série "D"
 - 130 \$0#aContribution (Victoria University of Wellington. Analytical Facility)
 - 130 \$0#aCinéma d'aujourd'hui (Lherminier (Firm))
 - 130 \$0#aAurex Jazz Festival '81 (Series)
 - 130 \$0#aOxford anthology of music (Sound recording).#pMedieval music.#hSound recording
 - 130 \$0#aOinarrizko euskarazko argitalpenak.#n2. maila
 - 130 \$0#aBible.#pO.T.#pPentateuch.#lAramaic#xVersions, Palestinian
 - 130 \$0#aBeowulf#xTranslations, French [German, etc.]
 - 130 \$0#aKoran#xCriticism, interpretation, etc.#xBiography
 - 130 \$0#aBible#xCriticism, interpretation, etc.#xHistory#yMiddle ages, 600-1500
-

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X30 Uniform Titles—General Information

X50 Topical Terms—General Information*National Level
Requirement*

150	Heading—Topical Term (NR)	<i>A</i>
450	See From Tracing—Topical Term (R)	<i>A</i>
550	See Also From Tracing—Topical Term (R)	<i>A</i>

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
	Undefined	<i>M</i>
<u>Second</u>	Nonsiling characters	<i>M</i>
0-9	Number of nonsiling characters present	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

<i>Main term portion</i>		
#a	Topical term or geographic name as entry element (NR)	<i>M</i>
#b	Topical term following geographic name as entry element (NR)	<i>A</i>
<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>		
#x	General subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
#y	Chronological subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
#z	Geographic subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
<i>Tracing and linking subfields</i>		
#i	Reference instruction phrase [450/550] (NR)	<i>A</i>
#w	Control subfield [450/550] (NR)	<i>A</i>
#5	Institution to which field applies [450/550] (R)	<i>A</i>
#6	Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

The content designators identify the subelements occurring in topical subject headings and subdivisions and node labels constructed according to generally accepted thesaurus-building conventions (e.g., *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH), *Medical Subject Headings* (MeSH)) that are identified in 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus).

■ INDICATORS**First Indicator - Undefined**

The first indicator is undefined and contains a blank (Ø).

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the number of character positions associated with a definite or indefinite article (e.g., The, An) at the beginning of a heading that are disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

0 - No nonfiling characters present

Value 0 indicates that no initial article character positions are disregarded.

Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning a heading that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

150 \$0#*a*Überhaupt (The German word)

An initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the topical term heading. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

150 \$0#*a*Afrihili (Artificial language)

[Full name is El-Afrihili; definite article is omitted.]

150 \$0#*a*La Plata dolphin

[Definite article is an integral part of the heading.]

1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters present

A non-zero value indicates that the heading begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. A diacritical mark or special character associated with the article (but preceding the first actual filing character) is included in the count of nonfiling characters.

Because the omission of initial articles to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes is common practice, values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in an X50 field.

■ SUBFIELD CODES**#a - Topical term or geographic name as entry element**

Subfield #a contains a topical subject, a geographic name used as an entry element for a topical term, or a node label term. Parenthetical qualifying information is not separately subfield coded.

150 \$0#*a*Blood

150 \$0#*a*catalogs by source

150 \$0#*a*Characters and characteristics in literature

150 \$0#*a*Bull Run, 2nd Battle, 1862

450 \$0#*a*Caracas.\$*b*Bolívar Statue

‡b - Topical term following geographic name as entry element

Subfield ‡b contains a topical term that is entered under a geographic name contained in subfield ‡a. This construction is not commonly used in 150 or 550 heading fields; it may occur in 450 See From Tracing fields.

450 00‡aWashington, D.C.‡bLincoln Memorial

‡i - Reference instruction phrase [450/550]

Subfield ‡i contains a reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield ‡w (Control subfield). Subfield ‡i is appropriate only in the 450 See From Tracing and 550 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡i are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

‡w - Control subfield [450/550]

Subfield ‡w contains up to four character positions (designated as ‡w/0, ‡w/1, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in the 450 See From Tracing and 550 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

‡x - General subdivision

Subfield ‡x contains a subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision) or ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate in the X50 fields only when a general topical or form subject subdivision is added to a main term to form an extended subject heading.

- 150 00‡aConflict of laws‡xSupport (Domestic relations)
- 150 00‡aIndulgences‡xControversial literature‡xEarly works to 1800
- 150 00‡aAmusements‡xReligious aspects‡xBuddhism,
[Christianity, etc.]

‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subfield ‡y contains a subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate in the X50 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to the main term to form an extended subject heading.

- 150 00‡aArchitecture, Modern‡y19th century
- 150 00‡aGod‡xHistory of doctrines‡yMiddle Ages, 600-1500
- 150 00‡aMusic‡y500-1400
- 150 00‡aPainting, Chinese‡ySung-Yuan dynasties, 960-1368
‡xSocieties, etc.

X50

#z - Geographic subdivision

Subfield #z contains a geographic subject subdivision. Subfield #z is appropriate in the X50 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a main term to form an extended subject heading.

150 \$0#aChapels#zGermany (West)
150 \$0#aWater resources development#zKenya
150 \$0#aMusic festivals#zIllinois

#5 - Institution to which field applies [450/550]

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added a tracing field to a national authority file record. Subfield #5 is appropriate only in the 450 See From Tracing and 550 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #5 are provided in the *Tracings and Reference Fields-General Information* section.

#6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings

The following categories are topical terms:

Artists' groups	Fictitious characters
Athletic contests	Folk festivals and celebrations
Baths, Ancient	Games (Events)
Competitions	Gates
Computer languages	Gods
Computer systems	Hill figures
Contests	Legendary characters
Ethnic groups	Legendary dynasties
Events	Model railroads
Expeditions, Military	Monuments (Structures, statues, etc.)
Feasts	Movements, Social
Festivals and celebrations (not formally organized)	Pyramids
Festivals, Folk	

Races (Contests)	Tests
Railroad models	Tombs
Rooms	Towers
Schools of artists	Tribes (Ethnic groups)
Shrines (<u>not</u> churches)	
Social movements	Walls
Sports events	
Stars (Types)	
Statues	
Structures (nongeographic, e.g. towers)	
Stupas	

'unctuation

The punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify USMARC punctuation practices.

In X50 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 150 \$0# a Magazine illustration
- 150 \$0# a Seasonal variations (Economics)
- 150 \$0# a Education #z Washington (D.C.)
- 150 \$0# a Museums #z Russian S.F.S.R.
- 150 \$0# a Art, Chinese #y To 221 B.C.
- 150 \$0# a Research libraries #z Mexico #x Societies, etc.

acing

→ spaces are used in initialisms, acronyms, or abbreviations.

- 150 \$0# a C.O.D. shipments
- 450 \$0# a B.A. degree
- 450 \$0# a BA degree

→ space is used between preceding and succeeding initial letters.

- 450 \$0# a Ph. D. degree

X50

Display Constant

- [dash associated with the content of subfield †x, †y, or †z]

The dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield †x, †y, or †z.

Content designated field:

150 †0†aChapels†zGermany

Display example:

Chapels—Germany

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

150 Heading—Topical Term (NR)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a topical term used as a heading in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f), a subdivision record (008/09, code d), a reference record (008/09, code b or g), or a node label record (008/09, code e). In an established heading record or subdivision record, field 150 contains the established form of a heading. In records for references and node labels, this field contains an unestablished form of a heading.

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 150, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X50 Topical Terms—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

- 150 \$0#aCatalogue . . .
 - 150 \$0#aDrug effects
 - 150 \$0+abiographies by form
 - 150 \$0+aJohn, the Baptist, Saint, in the Koran
 - 150 \$0+aCatholic Church in art
 - 150 \$0+aHighland games in literature
 - 150 \$0+aBible in atheism
 - 150 \$0+aGreece in art
 - 150 \$0+aHurricane Flora, 1963
 - 150 \$0+aSalvation+\$xPrayer-books and devotions+\$xEnglish, [French, German, etc.]+\$xHistory and criticism
 - 150 \$0+aEnglish language+\$xGrammar+\$y1800-1869
 - 150 \$0+aDrama+\$y17th century
 - 150 \$0+aGeology, Stratigraphic+\$yCarboniferous
 - 150 \$0+aFrench language+\$yEarly modern, 1500-1700+\$xVocabulary
 - 150 \$0+aEtching+\$y18th century+\$zSpain
-

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X50 Topical Terms—General Information

X51 Geographic Names—General Information

National Level Requirement

151 Heading—Geographic Name (NR) A
451 See From Tracing—Geographic Name (R) A
551 See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name (R) A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
↳	Undefined	<i>M</i>
<u>Second</u>	Nonfiling characters	<i>M</i>
0-9	Number of nonfiling characters present	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

	<i>Name portion</i>	
#a	Geographic name (NR)	M
	<i>Subject subdivision portion</i>	
#x	General subdivision (R)	A
#y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
#z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A
	<i>Tracing and linking subfields</i>	
#i	Reference instruction phrase [451/551] (NR)	A
#w	Control subfield [451/551] (NR)	A
#5	Institution to which field applies [451/551] (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

The content designators identify the subelements occurring in geographic name headings and subject subdivisions constructed according to generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building conventions (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR 2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH)) that are identified in 008/10 (Descriptive cataloging rules) or 008/11 (Subject heading system/thesaurus). Jurisdiction names alone or followed by subject subdivisions are X51 geographic names. A name of a jurisdiction that represents an ecclesiastical entity is contained in the X10 fields. A corporate name, a form subheading, a title of a work, and/or a city section name entered under the name of a jurisdiction are contained in the X10 fields. Geographic names used in phrase subject headings (e.g., Iran in the Koran) are contained in the X50 fields.

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined

The first indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (%).

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies the number of character positions associated with a definite or indefinite article (e.g., The, An) at the beginning of a heading that are disregarded in sorting and filing processes.

0 - No nonfiling characters present

Value 0 indicates that no initial article character positions are disregarded.

Diacritical marks or special characters at the beginning of a heading that does not begin with an initial article are not counted as nonfiling characters.

151 \$0‡aÅland Islands (Finland)

An initial definite or indefinite article may also simply be deleted in the formulations of the geographic name heading. If the initial article is retained but is not disregarded in sorting and filing processes, value 0 is used.

151 \$0‡aGuilvenec (France)

[Full name is Le Guilvenec; definite article is omitted.]

151 \$0‡aLa Plata (Argentina)

[Definite article is an integral part of the name.]

1-9 - Number of nonfiling characters present

A non-zero value indicates that the heading begins with a definite or indefinite article that is disregarded in sorting and filing processes. A diacritical mark or special character associated with the article (but preceding the first actual filing character) is included in the count of nonfiling characters.

Because the omission of initial articles to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes is common practice, values 1-9 are unlikely to be used in an X51 field.

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Geographic name**

Subfield ‡a contains a geographic name. Parenthetical qualifying information is not separately subfield coded.

151 \$0‡aAmazon River

151 \$0‡aCommunist countries

151 \$0‡aHalley's comet

151 \$0‡aInterstate 70

151 \$0‡aMason and Dixon's Line

151 \$0‡aHimalaya Mountains

151 \$0‡aIrrawaddy Division (Burma)

151 \$0‡aLeesville (S.C.)

151 \$0‡aPalenque Site (Mexico)

151 \$0‡aPompeii (Ancient city)

151 \$0‡aAltamira Cave (Spain)

151 \$0‡aAntietam National Battlefield (Md.)

- 151 \$0#*a*Greenwich Village (New York, N.Y.)
 151 \$0#*a*Husum-Schwesing (Germany : Concentration camp)
 151 \$0#*a*King Ranch (Tex.)
 151 \$0#*a*Warm Springs Indian Reservation (Or.)
 151 \$0#*a*Delaware Memorial Bridge (Del. and N.J.)

#i - Reference instruction phrase [451/551]

Subfield #i contains a reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield #w (Control subfield). Subfield #i is appropriate only in the 451 See From Tracing and 551 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield #i are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields-General Information* section.

#w - Control subfield [451/551]

Subfield #w contains up to four character positions (designated as #w/0, #w/1, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield #w is appropriate only in the 451 See From Tracing and 551 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield #w are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields-General Information* section.

#x - General subdivision

Subfield #x contains a subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield #y (Chronological subdivision) or #z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield #x is appropriate in the X51 fields only when a general topical or form subject subdivision is added to a geographic name to form an extended subject heading.

- 151 \$0#*a*Texas#*x*Governors#*x*Staff
 151 \$0#*a*Aix-en-Provence (France)#*x*Social life and customs#*x*Early works to
 1800
 151 \$0#*a*United States#*x*Census, 2nd, 1800

#y - Chronological subdivision

Subfield #y contains a subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield #y is appropriate in the X51 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a geographic name to form an extended subject heading.

- 151 \$0#*a*Greece#*x*History#*y*Geometric period, ca. 900-700 B.C.
 151 \$0#*a*Uruguay#*x*History#*y*Great War, 1843-1852
 151 \$0#*a*United States#*x*History#*y*Civil War, 1861-1865
 #*x*Conscientious objectors

‡z - Geographic subdivision

Subfield ‡z contains a geographic subject subdivision. Subfield ‡z is appropriate in the X51 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a geographic name to form an extended subject heading.

151 10‡aUnited States‡xBoundaries‡zCanada

| ‡5 - Institution to which field applies [451/551]

Subfield ‡5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added a tracing field to a national authority file record. Subfield ‡5 is appropriate only in the 451 See From Tracing and 551 See Also From Tracing fields. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡5 are provided in the *Tracings and Reference Fields-General Information* section.

| ‡6 - Linkage

Subfield ‡6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield ‡6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings

The following categories are geographic names:

Agoras	Comets
Airports	Communes
Amusement parks	Concentration camps
Arboretums	Conservation districts
Archaeological sites	Countries, Groups of, e.g.,
Areas and regions	Developing countries,
	Communist countries, Islamic
Botanical gardens	countries, etc.
Boundary lines	Country clubs
Bridges	Dams
	Deserts
Calderas	Docks
Camps	Economic zones
Canals	Esplanades
Caves	Estates
Cemeteries	
Cities, Extinct (pre-1500)	
City sections (entered directly)	
Collective settlements	

Farms	Railroad tunnels
Forests	Ranches
Fortresses (Structures)	Recreation areas
Forts (Military posts, fortresses, etc.)	Refugee camps
Free ports and zones	Regions, Geographic, e.g., Antarctic regions, Tropics, etc.
Galaxies	Reservations, Indian
Gardens	Reserves (Parks, forests, etc.)
Gas fields	Reservoirs
Geographic regions, e.g., Antarctic regions, Tropics, etc.	Rivers
Geologic basins	Roads
Grasslands	
	Sanitary landfills
Hazardous waste sites	Sanitation districts
Herbariums	Seas
Highways	Squares
Historic sites	Stars (Individual)
Historical parks	Steppes
Islands, Nonjurisdictional	Streets
Jurisdictions, Ancient	Trails
Lakes	Tunnels
Land grants	
Lines, Boundary	U.S. National Park Service, U.S. Forest Service, and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service units named after a park, forest, etc.
Marketplaces (Ancient)	Valleys
Military installations (active and inactive)	Waterways
Mines	Wildlife refuges
Mountains	Zoos
Oceans currents	
Open spaces	
Parks	
Pipelines	
Plains	
Plantations	
Playgrounds	
Plaza (Open spaces, squares, etc.)	
Ports (Physical facilities)	

X51

Punctuation

The punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify USMARC punctuation practices.

An X51 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 151 \$0#*a*Cambridge (Mass.)\$xSchools
151 \$0#*a*Egypt\$xFHistory\$yTo 332 B.C.
151 \$0#*a*United States\$xEconomic policy\$y1981-

451 \$0#*wnnnaa*\$*a*Chino Valley, Ariz.

A data element followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless that portion ends with an abbreviation, initialism, or open date.

- 151 \$0#*a*China\$xFHistory\$yHan dynasty, 202 B.C.-220 A.D.\$xBibliography

Spacing

No spaces are used in initialisms.

- 151 \$0#*a*Washington (D.C.)
151 \$0#*a*China\$xFHistory\$yHan dynasty, 202 B.C.-220 A.D.

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

- 151 \$0#*a*Vienna (W. Va.)
151 \$0#*a*Adelaide (S. Aust.)

A data element that contains an open-ended date ends with one space when it is followed by a subject subdivision.

- 151 \$0#*a*United States\$xFForeign relations\$y1981- \$xPeriodicals

Display Constant

- [dash associated with the content of subfield \$x, \$y, or \$z]

The dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield \$x, \$y, or \$z.

Content designated field:

- 151 \$0#*a*United States\$xBoundaries\$zCanada

Display example:

United States-Boundaries-Canada

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD**Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information**

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY***#b Name following place as entry element [OBSOLETE]***

Subfield #b was made obsolete in 1987. A city section name entered under the name of a jurisdiction is contained in an X10 field. Records created before this change may contain an X51 field with a subfield #b for this type of name.

151 Heading—Geographic Name (NR)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a geographic name used as a heading in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f), a subdivision record (008/09, code d), or a reference record (008/09, code b, c, or g). In an established heading record or a subdivision record, field 151 contains the established form of a name. In records for references, this field contains an unestablished form of a name.

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 151, input conventions, and national-level record requirements are given in the *X51 Geographic Names—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

- 151 \$0#aNorth End (Boston, Mass.)
 - 151 \$0#aNTramayes (France : Canton)
 - 151 \$0#aGreat Lakes
 - 151 \$0#aMississippi River
 - 151 \$0#aGulf Stream
 - 151 \$0#aTropics
 - 151 \$0#aVenus (Planet)
 - 151 \$0#aGreen River (Ky. : River)
 - 151 \$0#aGreen River (Wyo.-Utah)
 - 151 \$0#aAtlantic Wall (France and Belgium)
 - 151 \$0#aDeveloping countries
 - 151 \$0#aFort Alexander Indian Reserve (Man.)
 - 151 \$0#aArlington National Cemetery (Va.)
 - 151 \$0#aChorweiler (Cologne, Germany)
 - 151 \$0#aUnited States#xForeign relations#zSoviet Union
-

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X51 Geographic Names—General Information

Tracings and References

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

	<i>Tracing fields</i>	<i>National Level Requirement</i>
4XX	See From Tracings (R)	A
5XX	See Also From Tracings (R)	A
	<i>†i</i> Reference instruction phrase (NR)	A
	<i>‡w</i> Control subfield (NR)	A
	<i>/0</i> Special relationship	A
	a Earlier heading	O
	b Later heading	O
	d Acronym	O
	f Musical composition	O
	g Broader term	O
	h Narrower term	O
	i Reference instruction phrase in subfield <i>†i</i>	O
	n Not applicable	O
	<i>/1</i> Tracing use restriction	O
	a Name reference structure only	O
	b Subject reference structure only	O
	c Series reference structure only	O
	d Name and subject reference structures	O
	e Name and series reference structures	O
	f Subject and series reference structures	O
	g Name, subject, and series reference structures	O
	n Not applicable	O
	<i>/2</i> Earlier form of heading	O
	a Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)	O
	c Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)	O
	o Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)	O
	n Not applicable	O
	<i>/3</i> Reference display	O
	a Reference not displayed	O
	b Reference not displayed, field 664 used	O
	c Reference not displayed, field 663 used	O
	d Reference not displayed, field 665 used	O
	n Not applicable	O
	<i> </i> <i>‡5</i> Institution to which field applies (NR)	A
	<i>Reference fields</i>	
260	Complex See Reference—Subject (R)	A
360	Complex See Also Reference—Subject (R)	A
663	Complex See Also Reference—Name (NR)	O
664	Complex See Reference—Name (NR)	O
665	History Reference (NR)	O
666	General Explanatory Reference—Name (NR)	O

Tracings and References

DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A cross reference leads from an unestablished heading to an established heading (see reference) or from an established heading to other established headings (see also reference). Actual cross references are generally not carried explicitly in authority records. Instead, variant form and related headings are carried in authority records in either *tracing* or *reference note* fields. Cross reference displays may be generated by combining the contents of a tracing or a reference note field and the 1XX field of a record.

Tracing fields lead directly from one heading to a single other heading. A 4XX See From Tracing field leads from an unestablished heading to an established heading. A 5XX See Also From Tracing field leads from an established heading to another established heading. Cross reference displays generated from the tracing fields are called *simple cross references*. In a simple cross reference display, the content of the 4XX or 5XX field is the *heading referred from*, and, following a reference instruction phrase, the content of the 1XX field is the *heading referred to*. In the tracing fields, the reference instruction phrase may be implicitly associated with either the field tag or a code in subfield *#w/0* (Special relationship). In unusual cases, the reference instruction phrase may be carried explicitly in subfield *#i* (Reference instruction phrase).

100 10#aDe Angelini, Anna

400 10#aAngelini, Anna de

[Reference instruction phrase is associated with field tag 400.]

Cross reference display example:

Angelini, Anna de

search under: De Angelini, Anna

The 4XX and 5XX fields are used only in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f).

Reference note fields lead from one heading to one or more other headings. A reference note field is used when more complex reference instruction is needed than can be conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from 4XX and/or 5XX tracing fields. Cross reference displays constructed from the reference note fields are *complex cross references*. In a complex cross reference display, the content of the 1XX field of a record is the *heading referred from*, and, following a reference instruction phrase, the reference note field contains the *heading(s) referred to*. In fields 260 and 360, the complete reference instruction may be a combination of a phrase implicitly associated with the field tag and explicit text in subfield *#i* (Explanatory text). In fields 663, 664, 665, and 666, the reference instruction text is contained in subfield *#a* (Explanatory text).

150 \$0#aAmateurs' manuals

260 \$b#isubdivision#aAmateurs' manuals#\$iunder subjects, e.g.

#aRadio-Amateurs' manuals

[Reference instruction phrase is associated with field tag 260 and is also explicit in 260#i.]

Tracings and References

Cross reference display example:

Amateurs' manuals

search under: subdivision Amateurs' manuals under subjects, e.g.

Radio—Amateurs' manuals

100 10#*a*Arlen, Harold,#d1905-#tBloomer girl

664 0#*a*For collections beginning with this title search under #bArlen, Harold,
1905-#tMusical comedies. Selections

[Reference instruction phrase is explicit in field 664*#a*.]

Cross reference display example:

Arlen, Harold, 1905- Bloomer girl

For collections beginning with this title search under: Arlen Harold,
1905- Musical comedies. Selections

There are two types of reference note fields: 1) those used in established heading records (008/09, code a or f); and 2) those used in reference records (008/09, code b, c, or g). Fields 360, 663, and 665 are used in established heading records to lead from an established heading to other established headings. Fields 260, 664, and 666 are used in reference records to lead from an unestablished heading to established headings.

Current cataloging practice does not encourage the use of a reference note field if cross references generated from tracings in one or more 4XX and/or 5XX fields will provide satisfactory user guidance. For example, instead of carrying a 665 field in each of the established heading records involved in corporate body name changes, each name is traced in a 4XX or 5XX field. The earlier or later name relationship between each 4XX or 5XX field and the 1XX field is indicated by a code in subfield #w/0 (Special relationship).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying subfields #i (Reference instruction phrase), #w (Content subfield), and #5 (Institution to which field applies) in the 4XX and 5XX fields and examples of simple cross reference displays are provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the content designators for the name/term, title, and subject subdivision portions of the 4XX and 5XX tracing fields and for subfield #6 (Linkage) are provided in the *General Information* sections for each type of heading (X00 Personal Names; X10 Corporate Names; X11 Meeting Names; X30 Uniform Titles; X50 Topical Terms; X51 Geographic Names).

Examples of complex cross reference displays that may be generated from fields 260, 360, 663, 664, 665, and 666 are also provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the content designators for these fields are provided in the individual field descriptions.

Alternate Graphic Representation

Subfield #6 (Linkage) is defined for all of the tracing and reference fields. The description of subfield #6 in field 663 (Complex See Also Reference—Name) also applies to each of these fields. It will be added to the other fields when they are reissued for other changes.

Tracings and References

■ TRACING FIELDS – SIMPLE CROSS REFERENCES

Example cross references are generated for display from tracing fields. The following description related to the tracing fields is arranged by the source of the reference instruction phrase used in the cross reference: tag related, subfield $\neq i$, and subfield $\neq w$. The character positions defined for subfield $\neq w$ are also described here.

Tag Related Reference Instruction Phrase

A reference instruction phrase such as *see*: or *search under*: may be implicitly associated with a 4XX tracing field tag in an established heading record and may be used to generate a display of a cross reference. A reference instruction phrase such as *see also*: or *search also under*: may be implicitly associated with a 5XX tracing field in an established heading record and may be used to generate a display of a cross reference.

100 10 $\neq a$ Arief, Barda Nawawi, $\neq d$ 1943-
400 00 $\neq a$ Barda Nawawi Arief, $\neq d$ 1943-

Cross reference display example:

Barda Nawawi Arief, 1943-
search under: Arief, Ba \ddot{a} da Nawawi, 1943-

$\neq i$ - Reference instruction phrase

Subfield $\neq i$ contains a special reference instruction phrase that may be used in a cross reference display. When a tracing field contains subfield $\neq i$, control subfield $\neq w/0$ contains code i (Reference instruction phrase in subfield $\neq i$). Code i indicates that the generation of a tag related reference instruction phrase in a cross reference display should be suppressed. The content of subfield $\neq i$ is the reference instruction phrase to be used in the cross reference display.

151 $\neq 0\neq a$ Sri Lanka
451 $\neq 0\neq wib\neq a$ Ceylon $\neq i$ For subject entries search under
551 $\neq 0\neq waa\neq a$ Ceylon

[Two cross references are required because of varying subject and name reference structures.]

Cross reference from field 451 display example:

Ceylon
For subject entries search under: Sri Lanka

Cross reference from field 551 display example:

Ceylon
search also under later heading: Sri Lanka

$\neq w$ - Control subfield

Subfield $\neq w$ contains up to four character positions (designated as $\neq w/0$, $\neq w/1$, etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the 4XX or 5XX heading and whether a tracing is restricted to the reference structure of a particular type of authority. Subfield $\neq w$ need not be used if none of the characteristics is applicable. Because the definitions of the codes in subfield $\neq w$ are dependent on the character position in which they occur, the coding of any character position mandates that each preceding character position contains a code or a fill character (|); succeeding character positions need not be used. For example, if $\neq w/0$ and $\neq w/1$ are not applicable but $\neq w/2$'s applicable, then $\neq w/0$ and $\neq w/1$ each contain code n (Not applicable) or a fill character (|).

Tracings and References

-‡w/0 - Special relationship

Subfield ‡w/0 contains a one-character code that describes a relationship between a 1XX heading and a 4XX or 5XX heading that is more specific than the relationship implicit in the tag. The codes may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase in a cross reference display.

a - Earlier heading

Code a indicates that the established heading in the tracing field is an earlier name for the 1XX heading. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search also under the later heading:* in a cross reference display.

110 10 ‡aMissouri.‡bState Highway Patrol.‡bCriminal Records
Division

510 10 ‡wa‡aMissouri.‡bState Highway Patrol.‡bCriminal Records
Section

[The division was formerly called a section.]

Cross reference display example:

Missouri. State Highway Patrol. Criminal Records Section
search also under the later heading: Missouri. State
Highway Patrol. Criminal Records Division

b - Later heading

Code b indicates that the heading in the tracing field is a later name for the 1XX heading. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search also under the earlier heading:* in a cross reference display.

110 10 ‡aMissouri.‡bState Highway Patrol.‡bCriminal Records
Section

510 10 ‡wb‡aMissouri.‡bState Highway Patrol.‡bCriminal Records
Division

[The section is currently called a division.]

Cross reference display example:

Missouri. State Highway Patrol. Criminal Records Division
search also under the earlier heading: Missouri. State
Highway Patrol. Criminal Records Section

Tracings and References

d - Acronym

Code d indicates that the heading in the tracing field is an acronym for the 1XX heading. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search under the full form of the heading*: in a cross reference display.

110 20#*a*Associação Brasileira para o Desenvolvimento das

Industrias de Base

410 20#*wd*#*a*Abdib

Cross reference display example:

Abdib

search under the full form of the heading: Associação

Brasileira para o Desenvolvimento das Industrias de Base

f - Musical composition

Code f indicates that the heading in the tracing field is for a literary work upon which the musical composition in the 1XX heading field is based. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *for a musical composition based on this work, search also under*: in a cross reference display. References for this type of relationship are not used in AACR 2 formulated tracing fields. They may occur in pre-AACR 2 formulated 5XX See Also From Tracing fields.

100 10#*a*Debussy, Claude,#*d*1862-1918.#*t*Chute de la maison Usher

500 10#*wf*#*a*Poe, Edgar Allan,#*d*1809-1849.#*t*Fall of the house of

Usher

Cross reference display example:

Poe, Edgar Allan, 1809-1849. Fall of the house of Usher

for a musical composition based on this work, search also

under: Debussy, Claude, 1862-1918. Chute de la maison Usher

g - Broader term

Code g indicates that the heading in the tracing field is a broader term than the 1XX heading. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search also under the narrower term*: in a cross reference display.

150 #0#*a*Toes

550 #0#*wg*#*a*Foot

Cross reference display example:

Foot

search also under the narrower term: Toes

Tracings and References

h - Narrower term

Code h indicates that the heading in the tracing field is a narrower term than the IXX heading. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *search also under the broader term:* in a cross reference display.

150 \$0+aFoot
550 \$y#wh#aToes

Cross reference display example:
Toes

search also under the broader term: Foot

i - Reference instruction phrase in subfield #i

Code i is used in conjunction with subfield #i (Reference instruction phrase). Guidelines for applying code i are given under the description of subfield #i.

n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the relationship between the heading in the tracing field and the IXX heading is not one of the special relationships for which other codes are defined in subfield #w/0. A tag related reference instruction phrase such as *search under:* or *search also under:* may be used in a cross reference display from the related heading. If code n is applicable, subfield #w/0 need not be coded unless a subsequent character position is required.

#w/1 - Tracing use restriction

Subfield #w/1 contains a one-character code that specifies the authority reference structure in which the use of a 4XX or 5XX tracing to generate a cross reference is appropriate. When the tracing reference structure use differs from the IXX heading use, a tracing use restriction code in subfield #w/1 enables suppression or generation of the cross reference as required for the type of reference structure.

- a - Name reference structure only
- b - Subject reference structure only
- c - Series reference structure only
- d - Name and subject reference structures
- e - Name and series reference structures
- f - Subject and series reference structures
- g - Name, subject, and series reference structures
- n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the authority structure use is the same as the IXX heading bibliographic record use coded in 008/14-16. If code n is applicable, subfield #w/1 need not be coded unless a subsequent character position is required.

Tracings and References

+w/2 - Earlier form of heading

Subfield +w/2 contains a one-character code that indicates whether the 4XX tracing is an earlier form in which the name or subject was established either in the relevant national authority file or in an authority file other than the national authority file.

- **Precedence of codes**—When more than one code applies to a 4XX tracing, the following table is used to determine the precedence status of each code. Preference is given to codes higher on the lists. The *Names* column covers records for names formulated according to descriptive cataloging rules (008/10, not code n). The *Subjects* column covers records for subjects formulated according to subject heading system/thesaurus conventions (008/11, not code n; 008/10, code n).

<u>Names</u>	<u>Subjects</u>
n Not applicable	n Not applicable
a Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)	e Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)
e Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)	o Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)
o Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)	

a - Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)

Code a indicates that the unestablished heading in the tracing field is a form of the 1XX name heading that was established in the national name authority file under pre-AACR 2 descriptive cataloging rules and was the established heading at the time of the changeover to the AACR 2 rules in 1981.

100 10#aCallaghan, Bede, #cSir, #d1912-
400 10#wnna#aCallaghan, Bede Bertrand, #cSir, #d1912-

Cross reference display example:

Callaghan, Bede Bertrand, Sir, 1912-

Search under the later form of the heading: Callaghan,
Bede, Sir, 1912-

e - Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)

Code e, in a record containing a 1XX name or subject heading, indicates that the unestablished heading in the tracing field is a form of the heading that was formerly established in the relevant national authority file under a situation other than that specified

Tracings and References

by code a. For example, code e is used when the 4XX tracing is an earlier form of a 1XX topical subject term heading that was formerly the established form in the national authority file. It is also used when the tracing is a pre-AACR 2 form of a name, name/title, or uniform title heading that had been established earlier in the national authority file but was not the established heading at the time of the changeover to the AACR 2 rules.

150 \$0#*a*Margarine
450 \$0#*wnne*#*a*Oleomargarine

151 \$0#*a*Boston (England)
451 \$0#*wnne*#*a*Boston (Lincolnshire)

o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)

Code o indicates that the unestablished heading in the tracing field is an earlier form of the 1XX name or subject heading that was formerly established in an authority file other than the relevant national authority file.

n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that the tracing does not contain a formerly established form of the 1XX heading. If code n is applicable, subfield *#w/2* need not be coded unless a subsequent character position is required.

—#w/3 - Reference display

Subfield #w/3 contains a one-character code that enables the generation or suppression of a cross reference from a 4XX or 5XX field.

a - Reference not displayed

Code a indicates that the generation of a cross reference display from a tracing field should be suppressed. Code a is used when the reason for suppression is not covered by code b, c, or d.

110 20#*a*Entomological Society of Karachi
510 20#*wanna*#*a*Karachi Entomological Society
[Cross reference is suppressed because heading has not been used.]

b - Reference not displayed, field 664 used

Code b indicates that the generation of a cross reference display from a tracing field in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) should be suppressed because of the existence of a separate reference record (008/09, code c) containing field 664 (Complex See Reference-Name).

See the field 664 description for examples of subfield #w/3 containing code b in tracing fields in established heading records. See the *Reference Fields - Complex References* description in this section for examples of cross reference displays generated from field 664.

Tracings and References

c - Reference not displayed, field 663 used

Code c indicates that the generation of a cross reference display from a tracing field in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) should be suppressed because the record also contains a 663 field (Complex See Also Reference-Name).

See the field 663 description for examples of subfield †w/3 containing code c in tracing fields in established heading records. See the *Reference Fields—Complex Cross References* description in this section for examples of cross reference displays generated from field 663.

d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used

Code d indicates that the generation of a cross reference display from a tracing field in an established heading record (008/09, Kind of record, code a) should be suppressed because the record also contains a 665 field (History Reference).

See the field 665 description for examples of subfield †w/3 containing code d in tracing fields in established heading records. See the *Reference Field—Complex Cross References* description in this section for examples of cross reference displays generated from field 665.

n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that there is no reference display restriction on the tracing field. If code n is applicable, subfield †w/3 need not be coded.

| †5 - Institution to which field applies

Subfield †5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that has added to an existing national authority file record a 4XX or 5XX tracing field containing a variant form of the 1XX heading or another heading related to the 1XX heading. It identifies an institution-specific tracing that may or may not apply to a universal use of the authority record. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.) Subfield †5 is always the last subfield in the field.

040   †aDLC‡cDLC
100 10†aBrown, George Douglas, †d1869-1902
400 10†aKing, Kennedy†5NNU
670   †aHis The house with green shutters, 1985:†bt.p. (George Douglas Brown)
[Tracing for pseudonym added to a national authority file record by New York University.]

■ REFERENCE FIELDS—COMPLEX CROSS REFERENCES

Complex cross references are carried directly in records as reference note fields. The following description is arranged by the source of the reference instruction phrase: tag related (with subfield †i) and subfield †a.

Tracings and References

Tag related reference instruction phrase with subfield **#i** _____

A 260 field in a reference record may be used to generate a display of a cross reference with a reference instruction phrase such as *see:* or *search under:*. A 360 field in an established heading record may be used to generate a cross reference with a reference instruction phrase such as *see also:* or *search also under:*. The text in subfield **#i** (Explanatory text) augments the tag related instruction phrase.

260 Complex See Reference-Subject:

008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]

150 \$0#**a Catalogue . . .**

260 \$0#i**Subject headings beginning with the word #**a**Catalog**

Cross reference display example:

Catalogue . . .

search under: Subject headings beginning with the word Catalog

360 Complex See Also Reference-Subject:

008/09 a [established heading record]

100 00#**a**Mary, #cBlessed Virgin, Saint #xApparitions and miracles

360 \$0#i**names of particular apparitions and miracles, e.g. #**a**Fatima,
Our Lady of**

Cross reference display example:

Mary, Blessed Virgin, Saint—Apparitions and miracles

search also under: names of particular apparitions and miracles,
e.g. Fatima, Our Lady of

#a - Explanatory text _____

Subfield **#a** contains a reference instruction phrase in reference fields 663, 664, 665, and 666.

663 Complex See Also Reference-Name:

008/09 a [established heading record]

100 10#**a**Japp, Alexander H.#q(Alexander Hay),#d1839-1905

663 \$0#a**For works of this author written under pseudonyms, search also
under #**b**Gray, E. Condor, 1839-1905 and #**b**Page, H. A., 1839-1905**

Cross reference display example:

Japp, Alexander H. (Alexander Hay), 1839-1905

For works of this author written under pseudonyms, search also
under: Gray, E. Condor, 1839-1905 and Page, H. A., 1839-1905

[The cross references from Gray and Page are similarly constructed.]

Tracings and References

664 Complex See Reference-Name:

- 008/09 c [reference record (traced reference)]
100 10‡aReger, Max‡d1873-1916.‡tDies irae
664 ‡b‡aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished
Requiem search under‡bReger, Max, 1873-1916.‡tRequiem (Mass)

Cross reference display example:

Reger, Max, 1873-1916. Dies irae

For this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem
search under: Reger, Max, 1873-1916. Requiem (Mass)

666 General Explanatory Reference-Name:

- 008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]
110 20‡aAktiebolaget . . .
666 ‡b‡aNamcs of corporate bodies beginning with this word are entered
under the next word in the name.

Cross reference display example:

Aktiebolaget . . .

Names of corporate bodies beginning with this word are entered
under the next word in the name.

665 History Reference:

- 008/09 a [established heading record]
110 10‡aConnecticut.‡bDept. of Social Services
665 ‡b‡aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form
the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.
‡aWorks by these bodies are found under the following headings
according to the name used at the time of publication:‡aConnecticut
Dept. of Social Services.‡aConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources.
‡aConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance.‡aSUBJECT ENTRY:
‡aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the
names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the
pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.

Cross reference display example:

Connecticut. Dept. of Social Services

In Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept.
of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance. Works by these bodies
are found under the following headings according to the name used at the time of
publication:

Connecticut. Dept. of Social Services
Connecticut. Dept. of Human Resources
Connecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance

SUBJECT ENTRY: Works about these bodies are entered under one or
more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage
to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.

[The cross references from the other corporate names are similarly constructed.]

Tracings and References

INPUT CONVENTIONS

The general input conventions for the 4XX and 5XX tracing fields are provided in the *General Information* sections for each type of heading (X00 Personal Names; X10 Corporate Names; X11 Meeting Names; X30 Uniform Titles; X50 Topical Terms; X51 Geographic Names.) The input conventions for the Reference fields are provided in the description of each field.

Display Constants for Cross References

In the 4XX and 5XX tracing fields, reference instruction phrases such as those listed below are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the code in subfield $\neq w/0$ or $/2$ or the field tag.

Subfield $\neq w/0$ code related:

- a search also under [see also] the later heading;
- b search also under [see also] the earlier heading;
- d search under [see] the full form of the heading;
- g search also under [see also] the narrower term;
- h search also under [see also] the broader term;
- n *[A tag-related reference instruction phrase may be used.]*

Tag-related:

- see:
- see also:
- search under:
- search also under:

Subfield $\neq w/2$ code related:

- a search under [see] the later form of heading;

In reference fields 260 and 360, the complete reference instruction phrase, such as *see*, *see also*, *search under*, *search also under* (uncertified text).

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Symbols of American Libraries

260 Complex See Reference—Subject (R)

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined		
ø	Undefined	M	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined		
ø	Undefined	M	M

Subfield Codes

#a	Heading referred to (R)		
#i	Explanatory text (R)	M	M

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the *explanatory text* and the *headings referred to* that are required when relationships exist between an unestablished subject and established subjects that cannot be adequately conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from 4XX See From Tracing fields in established heading records. The field is appropriate only in reference records (008/09, Kind of record, code b, c, or g) for subjects.

The 1XX field in the record contains the unestablished subject heading referred from. Field 260 contains the explanatory text for the see reference and the established headings referred to. The unestablished form of the heading contained in field 1XX of the reference record may either be traced in a 4XX field or noted in a 681 field (Subject Example Tracing Note) in the record for each established heading referred to in the 260 field.

A cross reference display may be constructed from the 1XX and 260 fields of the reference record. The subfield coding allows variation in the appearance of the display, e.g., the data in subfield #a may be highlighted.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Heading referred to

Subfield #a contains an established heading to which the unestablished form in field 1XX of the record refers. The headings referred to may be complete established headings or a part of an established heading, such as a subject subdivision or a partial heading with generalized usage descriptors enclosed in brackets. No subelements of the headings referred to are separately subfield coded. Adjacent headings referred to may be contained in a single subfield #a.

#i - Explanatory text

Subfield #i contains the explanatory text of the see reference. The text may be broken up by subfield #a data and may be only a connector term, such as *e.g.*, or *and*.

008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]
 150 \$0#aCatalogue . . .
 260 \$y#isubject headings beginning with the word#aCatalog
 [No records for headings beginning with the word catalog contain
 a 681 field]

008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]
 150 \$0#aChicano language
 260 \$y#isubdivisions#aDialects#iand#aProvincialisms#iunder#aSpanish
 language#ividided by United States or specific locality in the
 United States, e.g.#aSpanish language—Dialects—United States;
 Spanish language—Provincialisms—Southwestern States

008/09 a [established heading record]
 150 \$0#aSpanish language#xDialects#zUnited States
 681 \$y#iExample under reference from#aChicano language

008/09 a [established heading record]
 150 \$0#aSpanish language#xProvincialisms#zSouthwestern States
 681 \$y#iExample under reference from#aChicano language

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Reference Record Variable Fields

Reference records must contain a Leader, a Directory, and the following variable fields: 001 (Control Number), 005 (Date and Time of Latest Transaction), 008 (Field-Length Data Elements), 040 (Cataloging Source), and 1XX (Heading).

Display Constants

see: [associated with field tag]
search under: [associated with field tag]

A reference instruction phrase such as *see:* or *search under:* is not carried in the USMARC record. Such a phrase may be system generated as a display constant associated with the field tag. Examples of cross reference displays are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

681 Subject Example Tracing Note
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

360 Complex See Also Reference—Subject (R)

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
¶	Undefined	<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
¶	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#a	Heading referred to (R)	<i>M</i>
#i	Explanatory text (R)	<i>M</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the *explanatory text* and the *headings referred to* that are required when relationships exist between an established subject and other established subjects that cannot be adequately conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from 5XX See Also From Tracing fields. The field is appropriate only in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) for subjects.

The 1XX field in the record contains an established subject heading referred from. Field 360 contains the explanatory text for the see also reference and the other established headings referred to. The heading in the 1XX field is generally not traced in a 5XX field in the records for the subject headings referred to in field 360. Instead, the 1XX heading is noted in a 681 field (Subject Example Tracing Note) in the record for each subject heading referred to in the 360 field.

A cross reference display may be constructed from the 1XX field. The subfield coding allows variation in the appearance of the data. e.g., the data in subfield #a may be highlighted.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DATA**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Heading referred to

Subfield #a contains the related established headings to which the heading in field 1XX of the record refers. The headings referred to may be complete established headings or a part of an established heading, such as a subject subdivision or a partial heading with generalized usage descriptors enclosed in brackets. No subelements of the headings referred to are separately subfield coded. Adjacent headings referred to may be contained in a single subfield #a.

#i - Explanatory text

Subfield #i contains the explanatory text of the see also reference. The text may be broken up by subfield #a data and may be only a connector term, such as *e.g.* or *and*.

008/09 a [*established heading record*]
 100 00#*a*Mary, #cBlessed Virgin, Saint#xApparitions and miracles
 360 #y#*i*names of particular apparitions and miracles, e.g.#*a*Fatima,
 Our Lady of

008/09 a [*established heading record*]
 150 #0#*a*Fatima, Our Lady of
 681 #y#*i*Example under#*a*Mary, Blessed Virgin, Saint—Apparitions and
 miracles

008/09 a [*established heading record*]
 130 #0#*a*Bible#xComparative studies
 360 #y#*i*subdivision#*a*Relation to [the Old Testament, Matthew, Psalms,
 etc.]#*i*under the Bible and parts of the Bible, e.g.#*a*Bible. N.T.—
 Relation to the Old Testament; Bible. N.T. Matthew—Relation
 to Psalms; Bible. O.T. Psalms—Relation to Mark;#*i*etc.

008/09 a [*established heading record*]
 130 #0#*a*Bible.#pN.T.#xRelation to the Old Testament
 681 #y#*i*Example under#*a*Bible—Comparative studies
 *[The same 681 field is used in the records for the other subject
 headings referred to in the 360 field.]*

INPUT CONVENTIONS**Display Constants**

see also: *[associated with the field tag]*
search also under: *[associated with the field tag]*

A reference instruction phrase such as *see also:* or *search also under:* is not carried in the USMARC record. Such a phrase may be system generated as a display constant associated with the field tag. Examples of cross reference displays are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

681 Subject Example Tracing Note
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

400 See From Tracing—Personal Name (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a personal name *see from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see from reference from a personal name not used to an established heading.

The content designators used in the name, title, and subject subdivision portions of field 400 are the same as those defined for fields 100 (Heading—Personal Name) and 500 (See Also From Tracing—Personal Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 400, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X00 Personal Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields †w (Control subfield) and †i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 400 and 500. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

100 00‡aBhagata Singh,‡d1921-
 400 10‡aSingh, Bhagat,‡c1921-

100 10‡aBeethoven, Ludwig van,‡d1770-1827.‡tConcertos,‡mviolin,
 orchestra,‡nop. 61,‡rD major
 400 10‡aBeethoven, Ludwig van,‡d1770-1827.‡tKonzert für Violine und
 Orchester D-Dur op. 61

100 00‡aJesus Christ‡xHistory of doctrines‡yEarly church, ca. 30-600
 400 00‡aJesus Christ‡xInterpretations, New Testament

100 30‡aAnjou, House of
 400 30‡aAngiò, House of

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

[X00 Personal Names—General Information](#)
[Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information](#)

410 See From Tracing—Corporate Name (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a corporate name *see from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see from reference from a corporate name not used to an established heading.

The content designators used in the name, title, and subject subdivision portions of field 410 are the same as those defined for fields 110 (Heading—Corporate Name) and 510 (See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 410, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X10 Corporate Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields *#w* (Control subfield) and *#i* (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 410 and 510. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

EXAMPLES

110 10#*a*Honduras.#*b*Oficina de Estudios Territoriales
 410 10#*a*Honduras.#*b*Estudios Territoriales, Oficina de

110 10#*a*Venezuela.#*t*Reforma del control de cambio no. 2.#*l*English & Spanish
 410 10#*a*Venezuela.#*t*Amendment of exchange agreement no. 2

151 \$0#*a*Chinatown (San Francisco, Calif.)
 410 10#*a*San Francisco (Calif.).#*b*Chinatown

110 20#*a*Conföderation Iranischer Studenten (N.U.)
 410 20#*a*CISNU
 410 20#*wnnaa*#*a*Conföderation Iranischer Studenten

110 20#*a*Lherminier (Firm)
 410 20#*a*Pierre Lherminier (Firm)

130 \$0#*a*Lienzo Totomixtlahuaca
 410 20#*a*Centro de Estudios de Historia de México.#*k*Manuscript.#*s*Códice
 Condumex

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X10 Corporate Names—General Information
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

411 See From Tracing—Meeting Name (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a meeting name *see from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see from reference from a meeting name not used to an established heading.

The content designators used in the name, title, and subject subdivision portions of field 411 are the same as those defined for fields 111 (Heading—Meeting Name) and 511 (See Also From Tracing—Meeting Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 411, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X11 Meeting Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields *fw* (Control subfield) and *fi* (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 411 and 511. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

- 111 20#aInternational Symposium on Laser Anemometry
411 20#aSymposium on Laser Anemometry, International
- | 111 20#aBayreuther Festspiele.#eOrchester
411 10+wnnaa#aBayreuth, Ger. (City).#qFestspiele.#eOrchester
- | 111 20#aJakob-Stainer-Tagung#d(1983 :#cInnsbruck, Austria)
411 20#aJakob-Stainer-Symposium#d(1983 :#cInnsbruck, Austria)
- | 111 20#aInternational Population Conference#d(1959 :#cVienna, Austria).
#eWorking Committee of the Conference
411 20#aInternational Population Conference#d(1959 :#cVienna, Austria).
#eArbeitsausschuss des Kongresses
- | 130 00#aPublications of the Carlsberg Expedition to Phoenicia
411 20#aCarlsberg Expedition to Phoenicia#d(1958-1959).#tPublications of the
Carlsberg Expedition to Phoenicia

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X11 Meeting Names—General Information
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

430 See From Tracing—Uniform Title (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a uniform title *see from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see from reference from a uniform title not used to an established heading.

The content designators used in the title and subject subdivision portions of field 430 are the same as those defined for fields 130 (Heading—Uniform Title) and 530 (See Also From Tracing—Uniform Title). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 430, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X30 Uniform Titles—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields *fw* (Control subfield) and *ri* (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 430 and 530. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

130 \$0#aCollection Les Grandes familles industrielles
 430 \$0#aGrandes familles industrielles

100 10#aLewis, C. S.+q(Clive Staples),+d1898-1963.+tChronicles of Narnia
 (Collier Books (Firm))
 430 \$0#aChronicles of Narnia (Collier Books (Firm))

130 \$0#aThémis.+pGestion
 430 \$0#aGestion (Presses universitaires de France)

130 \$0#aBible+xInfluence+xCivilization, Medieval
 430 \$0#aBible+xInfluence+yMiddle Ages

150 \$0#aIran in the Koran
 430 \$0#aKoran+zIran

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

[X30 Uniform Titles—General Information](#)
[Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information](#)

450 See From Tracing—Topical Term (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a topical term *see from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see from reference from a topical heading not used to an established heading.

The content designators used in the main term and subject subdivision portions of field 450 are the same as those defined for fields 150 (Heading—Topical Term) and 550 (See Also From Tracing—Topical Term). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 450, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X50 Topical Terms—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields *fw* (Control subfield) and *ri* (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 450 and 550. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

150 \$0#aAfrican drama (English)
 450 \$0#aEnglish drama+\$xAfrican authors

150 \$0#aMusic+\$xTheory+\$y15th century
 450 \$0#aMusic+\$y15th century+\$xTheory

150 \$0#aGrammar, Comparative and general+\$xExclamations
 450 \$0#aExclamations (Linguistics)

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X50 Topical Terms—General Information
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

451 See From Tracing—Geographic Name (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a geographic name *see from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see from reference from a geographic name not used to an established heading.

The content designators used in the name and subject subdivision portions of field 451 are the same as those defined for fields 151 (Heading—Geographic Name) and 551 (See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 451, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X51 Geographic Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields †w (Control subfield) and †i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 451 and 551. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

151 \$0#*a*Ursa Major
 451 \$0#*a*Dipper (Constellation)

151 \$0#*a*Adirondack Mountains (N.Y.)
 451 \$0#*a*Adirondacks (N.Y.)

151 \$0#*a*Fort Lesley J. McNair (Washington, D.C.)
 451 \$0#*a*Washington Barracks (Washington, D.C.)

151 \$0#*a*Medina (Ohio)
 451 \$0#*wnnaa#**a*Medina, Ohio

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X51 Geographic Names—General Information
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

500 See Also From Tracing—Personal Name (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a personal name *see also from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see also from reference from an established personal name to a related established heading.

The content designators used in the name, title, and subject subdivision portions of field 500 are the same as those defined for fields 100 (Heading—Personal Name) and 400 (See From Tracing—Personal Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 500, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X00 Personal Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields *fw* (Control subfield) and *fi* (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 400 and 500. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

- 110 20*fa*Corinthian Hall (Kansas City, Mo.)
 - 500 10*fwgfa*Long, Robert Alexander,*fd*1850-1934*fx*Homes and haunts*fz*Missouri
 - 100 10*fa*Fauré, Gabriel,*fd*1845-1924.*ft*Ballades,*fmpiano,fnop.* 19
 - 500 10*fa*Fauré, Gabriel,*fd*1845-1924.*ft*Ballades,*fmpiano orchestra,fnop.* 19
 - 100 30*fa*Van Horn family
 - 500 30*fa*Horn family
-

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

- [X00 Personal Names—General Information](#)
- [Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information](#)

510 See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a corporate name *see also from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see also from reference from an established corporate name to a related established heading.

The content designators used in the name, title, and subject subdivision portions of field 510 are the same as those defined for fields 110 (Heading—Corporate Name) and 410 (See From Tracing—Corporate Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 510, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X10 Corporate Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields *#w* (Control subfield) and *#i* (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 410 and 510. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

110 20#aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Justice
 510 20#wb#aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency

110 20#aAssociation for Computing Machinery.#bSpecial Interest Group on Personal Computing
 510 20#wb#aAssociation for Computing Machinery.#bSpecial Interest Group on Small and Personal Computing Systems and Applications

110 10#aMaryland.#bAir Management Administration
 510 10#wa#aMaryland.#bAir Quality Programs

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X10 Corporate Names—General Information
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

511 See Also From Tracing—Meeting Name (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a meeting name *see also from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see also from reference from an established meeting name to a related established heading.

The content designators used in the name, title, and subject subdivision portions of field 511 are the same as those defined for fields 111 (Heading—Meeting Name) and 411 (See From Tracing—Meeting Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 511, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *XII Meeting Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields *#w* (Control subfield) and *#i* (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 411 and 511. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

- 111 20#aInternational Drip Irrigation Congress
 - 511 20#wa#aInternational Drip Irrigation Meeting
 - 511 20#wb#aInternational Drip/Trickle Irrigation Congress

 - 111 20#aCongrès européen de droit rural
 - 511 20#wa#aColloque européen de droit rural

 - 111 20#aEntretiens de Bichat
 - 511 20#wb#aEntretiens de Bichat Pitié-Salpêtrière

 - 110 10#aUnited States.#bDelegation to the Mexico-United States
Interparliamentary Conference, 19th, 1979, Mexico City and Ixtapa,
Mexico
 - 511 20#aMexico-United States Interparliamentary Conference.#eDelegations
-

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

XII Meeting Names—General Information
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

530 See Also From Tracing—Uniform Title (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a uniform title *see also from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see also from reference from an established uniform title to a related established heading.

The content designators used in the title and subject subdivision portions of field 530 are the same as those defined for fields 130 (Heading—Uniform Title) and 430 (See From Tracing—Uniform Title). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 530, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X30 Uniform Titles—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields \$w (Control subfield) and \$i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 430 and 530. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

130 \$0#aHabakkuk commentary
 530 \$0#aDead Sea scrolls

130 \$0#aOECD reviews of national policy for education
 530 \$0#aReviews of national policies for education

| 130 \$0#aData report (Maryland. Air Quality Programs)
 | 530 \$0+wb#aData report (Maryland. Air Management Administration)

130 \$0#aDossiers Cinéma d'aujourd'hui
 530 \$0#aCollection Cinéma d'aujourd'hui.\$pDossiers

130 \$0#aPublicaciones del Archivo Histórico de la Provincia de Buenos Aires.\$pDocumentos del archivo
 530 \$0+wb#aPublicaciones del Archivo Histórico de la Provincia d"Ricardo Levene."#nIII,\$pDocumentos del archivo

150 \$0#aGods, Vedic
 530 \$0+wg#aVedas\$xCriticism, interpretation, etc.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X30 Uniform Titles—General Information
 Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

550 See Also From Tracing—Topical Term (R)**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a tracing for a topical term *see also from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see also from reference from an established topical heading to a related established heading.

The content designators used in the main term and subject subdivision portions of field 550 are the same as those defined for fields 150 (Heading—Topical Term) and 450 (See From Tracing—Topical Term). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 550, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X50 Topical Terms—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields \$w (Control subfield) and \$i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 450 and 550. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

150 \$0#aTritheism

550 \$0+\$wg#aGod

150 \$0#aSand Creek, Battle of, 1864

550 \$0+\$wg#aIndians of North America\$xWars\$y1862-1865

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X50 Topical Terms—General Information

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

551 See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing for a geographic name *see also from reference*. It is used in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) to trace a see also from reference from an established geographic name to a related established heading.

The content designators used in the name and subject subdivision portions of field 551 are the same as those defined for fields 151 (Heading—Geographic Name) and 451 (See From Tracing—Geographic Name). Guidelines for applying these content designators for field 551, input conventions, and national level record requirements are given in the *X51 Geographic Names—General Information* section.

The tracing subfields †w (Control subfield) and †i (Reference instruction phrase) are defined only for use in fields 451 and 551. Guidelines for applying these two subfield codes and national level record requirements are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

151 \$0#aBuenos Aires (Argentina)
551 \$0#aBelgrano (Buenos Aires, Argentina)

151 \$0#aChelsea (London, England)
551 \$0#aKensington and Chelsea (London, England)
551 \$0#aLondon (England)

151 \$0#aBarents Sea
551 \$0#wg#aArctic Ocean

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

[X51 Geographic Names—General Information](#)
[Tracings and References—General Information](#)

64X Series Treatment—General Information*National Level
Requirement*

640	Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation (R)	A
641	Series Numbering Peculiarities (R)	O
642	Series Numbering Example (R)	A
643	Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body (R)	O
644	Series Analysis Practice (R)	O
645	Series Tracing Practice (R)	O
646	Series Classification Practice (R)	O

DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The 64X fields contain information concerning the treatment of a 1XX series heading when that heading is used in bibliographic records. Other series treatment information is contained in the fixed-length data elements of field 008 and in link, standard number, and call number fields in the 01X-09X fields.

642 Series Numbering Example (R)

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined		M
ø	Undefined		M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined		M
ø	Undefined		M

Subfield Codes

#a	Series numbering example (NR)		M
#d	Volumes/dates to which series numbering example applies (NR)	(current) (earlier)	O M
#5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)		M

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the series numbering example that is to be followed in the volume number/sequential designation portion of a series added entry tracing in bibliographic records for individual issues of the series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). When the form of the numbering varies within a series, field 642 is repeated to provide series numbering examples for the different ranges of volumes/dates. Different series numbering examples for different organizations and/or different copies or sets within the same organization are also contained in separate 642 fields.

Field 642 is used only when a numbered series (008/13, Numbered/unnumbered series, code a or c) is to be traced in bibliographic records (645, Series Tracing Practice, subfield #a, code t). Irregularities in series numbering are contained in field 641 (Series Numbering Peculiarities).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

642

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Series numbering example

Subfield #a contains an example of the form of the series numbering that is to be used in a tracing for a series added entry in bibliographic records for individual issues of a series.

Series numbering examples for variations in the form of the numbering for different ranges of volumes/dates or for different organizations are contained in separate 642 fields.

130 \$0+aJEB (Series)
642 \$1#a79/2#5DLC

130 \$0+aReport (Alaska. Dept. of Transportation and Public Facilities)
642 \$1#ano. AK-RD-86-14#5DI

#d - Volumes/dates to which series numbering example applies

Subfield #d contains a statement describing the applicability of the series numbering example. Subfield #d is used only when the series numbering example contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 \$0+aOccasional paper (Howard University. Mental Health Research and Development Center)
642 \$1#ano. 19#ditems published <1982 >#5DLC
642 \$1#av. 3, no. 4#ditems published before <1979 >#5DLC

#5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the series numbering example contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the series numbering example is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 \$0+aMemoirs of the Peabody Museum of American Archaeology and Ethnology, Harvard University
642 \$1#avol. 6#5DLC#5DLC photo-offset reprint

130 \$0+aOccasional paper (McGill University. Centre for East Asian Studies)
642 \$1#ano. 4#5DLC#5MH

644 Series Analysis Practice (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined		
ø	Undefined	M	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined		
ø	Undefined	M	M

Subfield Codes

#a	Series analysis practice (NR)		
#b	Exceptions to analysis practice (NR)	M	A
#d	Volumes/dates to which analysis practice applies (NR)	(current) O	(earlier) M
#5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	M	M

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a one-character code that indicates a specific organization's analysis practice for a series named in the IXX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The code specifies whether all, some, or none of the volumes of a series are analyzed for bibliographic records. The field may also contain the volumes/dates and/or the institution/copy identification to which the practice applies. Field 644 is not used to indicate that a series-like phrase (008/12, Type of series, code c) is not analyzed. Varying analysis practices for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series, for different copies or sets within the same organization, or for different organizations are contained in separate 644 fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DES**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Series tracing practice
Subfield #a contains a one-character code series.

- f - Analyzed in full
- p - Analyzed in part
- n - Not analyzed

Varying analysis practices are contained in separate 644 fields.

130 \$0+aMunkavédelem, szociálpolitika
 644 \$v+\$af#5DLC

130 \$0+aRapports des campagnes à la mer
 644 \$v+\$ap#5DLC

130 \$0+aMonographs of the Society for Research in Child Development
 644 \$v+\$an+\$dv. 49-#5DLC
 644 \$v+\$af+\$dv. 1-48#5DLC

#b - Exceptions to analysis practice

Subfield #b contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the analysis practice code contained in subfield #a does not apply. The analysis practice for the "excepted" items may be recorded in a separate 644 field. Subfield #b is used only when the analysis practice code contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 \$0+aEastern European economics
 644 \$v+\$an+\$bexcept v. 10, no. 1-3, v. 19, no. 4#5DLC

#d - Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the analysis practice applies. Subfield #d is used only when the analysis practice contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 \$0+aHorizons in biochemistry and biophysics
 644 \$v+\$af+\$danalyzable parts#5DLC

#5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the analysis practice contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the analysis practice is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 \$0+aArchives d'études orientales
 644 \$v+\$af#5DLC#5DLC photo-offset reprint

130 \$0+aColección R
 644 \$v+\$af#5DLC#5MH

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation

Field 644 does not end with a period as a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a period.

644 \$y#ap#5DLC photo-offset reprint

Capitalization

The code in subfield †a is input in lowercase.

644 \$y#ap#5UuM

Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

| 644 \$y#af#bexcept no. 6#d5DLC

Three spaces represent the part of an open-entry numbering designation in subfield †d when it is preceded or followed by additional subfield †d data.

644 \$y#af#d<1984- >#5DLC

644 \$y#ap#d< -1980>#5DLC

644 \$y#an#dv. 49-#5DLC

Order

The 644 field for *current* analysis practice precedes the 644 field for *earlier* practice.

644 \$y#an#dv. 49-#5DLC

644 \$y#af#dv. 1-48#5DLC

Display Constants

:	Analyzed in full	[associated with the]
:	Analyzed in part	[associated with the]
:	Not analyzed	[associated with the]
Applies to:		[associated with the]
(...)		[parentheses associated]

Phrases such as *Analyzed in full*, *Analyzed in part*, etc., may be system generated and contained in subfield †a.

644

A phrase such as *Applies to:* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #d.

Content designated field:

644 \$y#af#danalyzable parts\$5DLC

Display example:

f: Analyzed in full Applies to: analyzable parts (DLC)

Parentheses enclosing the NUC symbol are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of each subfield #5.

Content designated field:

644 \$y#af#5DLC#5MH

Display example:

f: Analyzed in full (DLC) (MH)

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

Symbols of American Libraries

645 Series Tracing Practice (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
¶	Undefined	<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
¶	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#a	Series tracing practice (NR)	<i>M</i>
#d	Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies (NR)	(current) <i>O</i>
#5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	(earlier) <i>M</i>
		<i>M</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a one-character code that indicates a specific organization's tracing practice for a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The code specifies whether the series is used as a series added entry or as an untraced series note in bibliographic records. The field may also contain the volumes/dates and/or the institution/copy identification to which the tracing practice applies. Field 645 is not used to indicate that a series-like phrase (008/12, Type of series, code c) is not traced. Varying tracing practices for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series, for different copies or sets within the same organization, or for different organizations are contained in separate 645 fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each

■ SUBFIELD CODES**#a - Series tracing practice**

Subfield #a contains a one-character code that indicates the series added entry tracing practice in bibliographic records.

t - Traced as a series added entry

n - Not traced as a series added entry

645

Varying tracing practices are contained in separate 645 fields.

130 \$0#aBerkeley-Duke occasional papers on the second economy in the USSR
645 \$y#at#5DLC

130 \$0#aSeria "Motywacje"
645 \$y#an#5DLC

#d - Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the tracing practice applies. Subfield #d is used only when the tracing practice contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 \$0#aBiblioteca del cielo
645 \$y#at#items cataloged after Dec. 31, 1980#5DLC
645 \$y#an#items cataloged before Jan. 1, 1981#5DLC

#5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the tracing practice contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the series tracing practice is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 \$0#aPoint de vue (Yaoundé, Cameroon)
645 \$y#an#5DLC

130 \$0#aColección R
645 \$y#an#5DLC#5MH

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation

Field 645 does not end with a period as a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a period.

645 \$y#at#5DLC photo-offset reprint

646 Series Classification Practice (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
ø	Undefined	M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

#a	Series classification practice (NR)	M
#d	Volumes/dates to which classification practice applies (NR)	(current) O
#5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	(earlier) M
		M

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a one-character code that indicates a specific organization's classification practice for a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The code specifies whether the volumes in the series are classified as a collection, with the main series, or separately. The field may also contain the volumes/dates and/or the institution/copy identification to which the classification practice applies. Field 646 is not used to indicate that a series-like phrase (008/12, Type of series, code c) is not classified. Varying classification practices for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series, for different copies or sets within the same organization, or for different organizations are contained in separate 646 fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**#a - Series classification practice**

Subfield #a contains a one-character code that indicates the classification practice for a series.

s - Volumes are classified separately

Code s indicates that no classification number is assigned to the series because each volume in the series is classified separately.

c - Volumes are classified as a collection

646

m - Volumes are classified with main or other series

Codes c and m indicate that a classification number is assigned to the series. The call number for the series is contained in one of the call number fields (050, 060, 070, 082) or in a locally defined call number field (09X) in the established series heading record.

Varying classification practices are contained in separate 646 fields.

130 \$0+aBibliothèque des "Temps nouveau" (Series)
646 \$y+as#5DLC

[No class number assigned to series classified separately.]

100 \$0+aDostoyevsky, Fyodor, #d1821-1881.#tWorks.#f1972
646 \$y+ac#5DLC
050 \$0+aPG3325#b.A1 1972

130 \$0+aTrudy Instituta eksperimental'noi meteorologii.+pSeriia "Fizika nizhnei atmosfery"
646 \$y+am#5DLC
050 \$0+aQC851+.L455 subser.

130 \$0+aTechnical report (Cooperative National Park Resources Studies Unit,
Hawaii)
646 \$y+as#5DLC
646 \$y+ac#5DI
090 \$y+aQH198.H3#bC66#5DI

#d - Volumes/dates to which classification practice applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the classification practice applies. Subfield #d is used only when the classification practice contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items of the series.

130 \$0+aMonographs of the Society for Research in Child Development
646 \$y+ac#dv. 1-35, v. 49-#5DLC
646 \$y+as#dv. 36-48#5DLC
050 \$0+aLB1103#b.S6#dv. 1-35, v. 49-

#5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the classification practice contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the classification practice is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 \$0+al.U.B. symposium series
646 \$y+as#5DLC#5ICU

66X-68X Notes—General Information

*National Level
Requirement*

667 Name Usage or Scope Note (R)	<i>O</i>
670 Source Data Found (R)	<i>A</i>
675 Source Data Not Found (NR)	<i>O</i>
678 Epitome (NR)	<i>O</i>
680 Subject Scope Note (R)	<i>O</i>
681 Subject Example Tracing Note (R)	<i>O</i>
682 Deleted Heading Information (NR)	<i>O</i>

DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The 66X-68X fields contain information that is primarily intended to guide catalogers. These notes often are not written in a form adequate for public user display. Field 680 (Subject Scope Note) is an exception to this general practice in that it is intended for display to public catalog users in addition to guiding catalogers.

663 Complex See Also Reference—Name (NR)

Indicators

First Undefined
 ∅ Undefined

O

M

Second Undefined
 ∅ Undefined

M

M

Subfield Codes

†a	Explanatory text (R)	M M A A
†b	Heading referred to (R)	
†t	Title referred to (R)	
†6	Linkage (NR)	

M

M

A

A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the *explanatory text* and the *headings referred to* that are required when relationships exist between an established name and other established names that cannot be adequately conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from 5XX See Also From Tracing fields. The field is appropriate only in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a) for names.

The 1XX field in the record contains an established heading referred from. Field 663 contains the explanatory text for the see also reference and the other established headings referred to. The established heading in field 1XX is also traced in a 5XX field in a record for each of the established headings referred to in field 663. Subfield †w/3 (Reference display) in each of the 5XX fields contains code c (Reference not displayed, field 663 used). Code c indicates that the generation of a simple cross reference from the 5XX field should be suppressed.

A cross reference may be constructed from the 1XX and 663 fields. A reference instruction phrase is incorporated into the text of subfield †a. Examples of complex cross reference displays are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Explanatory text

Subfield #a contains the explanatory text of the see also reference. The text includes a reference instruction phrase such as *see also* or *search also under*:

#b - Heading referred to

Subfield #b contains the related established headings to which the heading in field 1XX of the record refers. Except for subfield #t, no subelements within the heading referred to are separately subfield coded. Each separate heading referred to is contained in a separate subfield #b.

#t - Title referred to

Subfield #t contains the title portion of a name/title heading referred to.

The following example reflects the 663 fields and the corresponding 5XX tracing fields in the established heading records for an author who writes under his real name (Alexander H. Japp) and two pseudonyms (E. Condor Gray and H. A. Page):

008/09	a [established heading record]
100	10#aJapp, Alexander H.#q(Alexander Hay),#d1839-1905
500	10#wnnnc#aGray, E. Condor,#d1839-1905
500	10#wnnnc#aPage, H. A.,#d1839-1905
663	#b#aFor works of this author written under pseudonyms, search also under #bGray, E. Condor, 1839-1905 and#bPage, H. A., 1839-1905
008/09	a [established heading record]
100	10#aGray, E. Condor,#d1839-1905
500	10#wnnnc#aJapp, Alexander H.#q(Alexander Hay),#d1839-1905
500	10#wnnnc#aPage, H. A.,#d1839-1905
663	#b#aFor works of this author written under his real name, search also under#bJapp, Alexander H. (Alexander Hay), 1839-1905.#aFor works written under another pseudonym, search also under#bPage, H. A., 1839-1905
008/09	a [established heading record]
100	10#aPage, H. A.,#d1839-1905
500	10#wnnnc#aJapp, Alexander H.#q(Alexander Hay),#d1839-1905
500	10#wnnnc#aGray, E. Condor,#d1839-1905
663	#b#aFor works of this author written under his real name, search also under #bJapp, Alexander H. (Alexander Hay), 1839-1905.#aFor works written under another pseudonym, search also under#bGray, E. Condor, 1839-1905

#6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the 880 *Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

INPUT CONVENTIONS**Punctuation and Spacing**

The punctuation and spacing conventions described in the name heading *General Information* sections are also applicable to the Heading (#b) and Title (#t) subfields in field 663.

Field 663 does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the data ends with an abbreviation, an initial/letter, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X-- Names General Information sections
880 Alternate Graphic Representation
Tracing and Reference Fields-General Information

664 Complex See Reference—Name (NR)*O*Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#a	Explanatory text (R)	<i>M</i>
#b	Heading referred to (R)	<i>M</i>
#t	Title referred to (R)	<i>A</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the *explanatory text* and the *headings referred to* that are required when relationships exist between an unestablished name and one or more established names that cannot be adequately conveyed by simple cross references generated from 4XX See From Tracing fields in the established heading records. The field is appropriate only in reference records (008/09, Kind of record, code c) for names.

The 1XX field in the record contains an unestablished name referred from. Field 664 contains the explanatory text for the see reference and the established headings referred to. The unestablished heading in field 1XX is also traced in a 4XX field in a record for each of the established headings referred to in field 664. Subfield †w/3 (Reference display) in each of the 4XX fields contains code b (Reference not displayed, field 664 used). Code b indicates that the generation of a simple cross reference from the 4XX field should be suppressed.

A cross reference may be constructed from the 1XX and 664 fields. A reference instruction phrase is incorporated into the text of subfield #a. Examples of complex cross reference displays are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Explanatory text

Subfield #a contains the explanatory text of the see reference. The text includes a reference instruction phrase such as *see:* or *search under:*.

#b - Heading referred to

Subfield #b contains the established headings to which the heading in field 1XX of the record refers. Except for subfield #t, no subelements within the heading referred to are separately subfield coded. Each heading referred to is contained in a separate subfield #b.

#t - Title referred to

Subfield #t contains the title portion of a name/title heading referred to. Each title referred to under a single name is contained in a separate subfield #t.

008/09 c [reference record (traced reference)]
 100 10#aReger, Max,#d1873-1916.#tDies irae
 664 1#y#aFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished
 Requiem search under#bReger, Max, 1873-1916.#tRequiem (Mass)

008/09 a [established heading record]
 100 10#aReger, Max,#d1873-1916.#tRequiem (Mass)
 400 10#wnnnb#aReger, Max,#d1873-1916.#tDies irae

008/09 c [reference record (traced reference)]
 100 10#aMahfouz, Naguib
 664 1#y#asearch under#bMahfûz, Najîb, 1882-#bMahfûz,
 Najîb, 1912-

008/09 a [established heading record]
 100 10#aMahfûz, Najîb,#d1882-
 400 10#wnnnb#aMahfouz, Naguib

008/09 a [established heading record]
 100 10#aMahfûz, Najîb,#d1912-
 400 10#wnnnb#aMahfouz, Naguib

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Reference Record Fields

Reference records must contain a Leader, a Directory, and the following variable fields: 001 (Control Number), 005 (Date and Time of Latest Transaction), 008 (Fixed-Length Data Elements), 040 (Cataloging Source), and 1XX (Heading).

Punctuation and Spacing

The punctuation and spacing conventions described in the name heading *General Information* sections are also applicable to the Heading (#b) and Title (#t) subfields in field 664.

Field 664 does not end with a mark of punctuation (i.e., a period (.), a question mark (?), an exclamation mark (!), or a hyphen (-)), unless the data ends with an abbreviation, an initial/letter, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

X-- Names General Information sections
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

665 History Reference (NR)

0

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined ø	Undefined	<i>M</i> <i>M</i>
<u>Second</u>	Undefined ø	Undefined	<i>M</i> <i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#a History reference (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the text for a history reference for names. It is used when more information is needed about the relationships that exist among three or more established names (usually corporate names) than can be adequately conveyed by simple cross references generated from 5XX See Also From Tracing fields in the established heading records. The 665 field may also contain text describing the subject entry treatment for works about the various related headings. The field is appropriate only in established heading records (008/09, Kind of record, code a).

The 1XX field in the record contains an established heading referred from. Field 665 contains the history of the name changes and the other established headings referred to. The established heading in field 1XX is also traced in a 5XX field in the established heading records for the headings referred to in field 665. Subfield †w/3 (Reference display) in each of the tracing fields contains code d (Reference not displayed, field 665 used). Code d indicates that the generation of a simple cross reference from the 5XX field should be suppressed.

A cross reference may be constructed from the 1XX and 665 fields. A reference instruction phrase is incorporated into the text of subfield \$a. Examples of complex cross reference displays are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined: each contains a blank (W)

■ SUBFIELD CODE

†a - History reference

Subfield †a contains text describing the relationships and the headings to which the heading in field 1XX of the record refers. No subelements within the headings referred to are separately subfield coded.

Subfield †a may be repeated to allow the generation of paragraphs and/or a list of the headings in a cross reference display.

008/09 a [established heading record]
 110 10†aConnecticut.‡bDept. of Social Services
 510 10‡wnnnd†aConnecticut.‡bDept. of Human Resources
 510 10‡wnnnd†aConnecticut.‡bDept. of Income Maintenance
 665 ¶¶†aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to
 form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income
 Maintenance.‡aWorks by these bodies are found under the
 following headings according to the name used at the time of
 publication:‡aConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services.
 ‡aConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources.‡aConnecticut. Dept.
 of Income Maintenance.‡aSUBJECT ENTRY: Works about these
 bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting
 from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-
 separation period are entered under the name of the original
 body.

008/09 a [established heading record]
 110 10†aConnecticut.‡bDept. of Human Resources
 510 10‡wnnnd†aConnecticut.‡bDept. of Social Services
 510 10‡wnnnd†aConnecticut.‡bDept. of Income Maintenance
 665 ¶¶†aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to
 form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income
 Maintenance.‡aWorks by these bodies are found under the
 following headings according to the name used at the time of
 publication:‡aConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services.
 ‡aConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources.‡aConnecticut. Dept.
 of Income Maintenance.‡aSUBJECT ENTRY: Works about these
 bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting
 from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-
 separation period are entered under the name of the original
 body.

008/09 a [*established heading record*]
110 10+*a*Connecticut.+*b*Dept. of Income Maintenance
510 10+*wnnnd*+*a*Connecticut.+*b*Dept. of Social Services
510 10+*wnnnd*+*a*Connecticut.+*b*Dept. of Human Resources
665 *W*+*a*In Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to
form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income
Maintenance.+*a*Works by these bodies are found under the
following headings according to the name used at the time of
publication:*a*Connecticut. Dept. of Social Services.
*a*Connecticut. Dept. of Human Resources.*a*Connecticut. Dept.
of Income Maintenance.*a*SUBJECT ENTRY: Works about these
bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting
from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-
separation period are entered under the name of the original
body.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

666 General Explanatory Reference—Name (NR)*O*Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#a	General explanatory reference (R)	<i>M</i>
----	-----------------------------------	----------

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains text that explains how names having a common characteristic (e.g., surnames with separately written prefixes) are entered in a file. The field is appropriate only in reference records (008/09, Kind of record, code b).

The 1XX field in the record contains the unestablished data element referred from. Field 666 contains the explanatory information. The heading in the 1XX field is not traced in a 4XX field in any established heading record for names beginning with the specified characteristic.

A cross reference display may be constructed from the 1XX and 666 fields of the reference record. A reference instruction phrase is incorporated into the text of subfield #a. Examples of complex cross reference displays are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

UBFIELD CODE

- General explanatory reference

Subfield **#a** contains the text of the explanatory reference.

008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]
 100 00#aDe la

666 ¶¶#aNames beginning with this prefix are also entered under
 La (e.g., La Bretèque, Pierre de) or under the name following
 the prefix (e.g., Torre, Marie de la)

008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]
 110 20#aAktiebolaget . . .

666 ¶¶#aNames of corporate bodies beginning with this word are
 entered under the next word in the name.

UT CONVENTIONS

Reference Record Fields

Reference records must contain a Leader, a Directory, and the following variable fields: 001 (Control Number), 005 (Date and Time of Latest Transaction), 008 (Fixed-Length Data Elements), 040 (Cataloging Source), and 1XX (Heading).

Situation

If 666 ends with a period unless the data ends with another mark of punctuation such as a closing parenthesis.

ATTED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

640 Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation (R)

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Note format style	M
0	Formatted style	A
1	Unformatted style	A

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
þ	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

#a	Dates of publication and/or volume designation (NR)	M
#z	Source of information (NR)	A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the beginning/ending date(s) of publication and/or the extent of volumes within a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). It may also contain a citation for the source of the information. The information may be recorded in either a formatted or an unformatted style.

The volume designation information in this field is not an example of the form of series numbering that may be used in a bibliographic record. That information is contained in field 642 (Series Numbering Example). Report year coverage and numbering peculiarities information is contained in field 641 (Series Numbering Peculiarities).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS****First Indicator - Note format style**

The first indicator position contains a value that specifies whether the information in subfield #a is in a formatted or an unformatted style note.

0 - Formatted style

Value 0 indicates that subfield #a contains a formatted style note.

640 0þ#av. 1- Apr. 1970-
640 0þ#a1972-

640

1 - Unformatted style

Value 1 indicates that subfield **#a** contains an unformatted style note.

640 1#**a**Vols. published for the years 1953-1966

640 1#**a**Complete in 10 v.

Second Indicator - Undefined

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (B).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Dates of publication and/or volume designation

Subfield **#a** contains a designation of the beginning/ending date(s) of publication and/or the extent of volumes within a series.

640 1#**a**Complete in 15 v.

640 1#**a**Vols. published for the years 1864-1910

#z - Source of information

Subfield **#z** contains a citation for the source of the information contained in subfield **#a**.

640 1#**a**Calendar year 1982 pub. in 1983#zp. 3

640 1#**a**Vol. 1 pub. in 1954#zp. 2 of cov., v. 15

640 1#**a**Projected in 6 v.#zv. 1, p. 316

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation

In the following punctuation conventions, *mark of punctuation* is a period (.), a question mark (?), an exclamation mark (!), or a hyphen (-).

Subfield **#a** does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the subfield ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

640 1#**a**Began pub. in 1978#zOCLC 8253525

640 1#**a**Complete in 18 v.#zv. 1, series t.p.

Field 640 does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

640 1#**a**Planned in 2 v.#zv. 2, CIP info. Vol. 2 pub. in 1985

640 1#**a**Complete in 22 v.#zv. 3, pref.

640 1#**a**Ceased with 2 (1964)

640 0#**a**v. 1- Apr. 1970-

640 - p. 2
June 1987

Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

640 1\$#aComplete in 16 v.\$zv. 1, introd.

In a formatted style note, three spaces represent the missing part of an open-entry numbering designation followed by additional subfield \$a data.

640 \$y\$#av. 1- Apr. 1970-

Display Constant

—Cf. [associated with the content of subfield \$z]

The instruction term *—Cf.* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield \$z.

Content designated field:

640 1\$#aCalendar year 1982 pub. in 1983\$zp. 3

Display example:

Calendar year 1982 pub. in 1983—Cf. p. 3

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

641 Series Numbering Peculiarities

642 Series Numbering Example

64X Series Treatment—General Information

*National Level
Requirement*

640	Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation (R)	A
641	Series Numbering Peculiarities (R)	O
642	Series Numbering Example (R)	A
643	Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body (R)	O
644	Series Analysis Practice (R)	O
645	Series Tracing Practice (R)	O
646	Series Classification Practice (R)	O

DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The 64X fields contain information concerning the treatment of a 1XX series heading when that heading is used in bibliographic records. Other series treatment information is contained in the fixed-length data elements of field 008 and in link, standard number, and call number fields in the 01X-09X fields.

| Alternate Graphic Representation

Subfield #6 (Linkage) is defined for all of the series treatment fields. The description of subfield #6 in field 640 also applies to each of these fields. It will be added to the other 64X field descriptions when they are reissued for other changes.

640 Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation (R)

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Note format style	
0	Formatted style	<i>M</i>
1	Unformatted style	<i>A</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	
þ	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

	#a Dates of publication and/or volume designation (NR)	<i>M</i>
	#z Source of information (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the beginning/ending date(s) of publication and/or the extent of volumes within a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). It may also contain a citation for the source of the information. The information may be recorded in either a formatted or an unformatted style.

The volume designation information in this field is not an example of the form of series numbering that may be used in a bibliographic record. That information is contained in field 642 (Series Numbering Example). Report year coverage and numbering peculiarities information is contained in field 641 (Series Numbering Peculiarities).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Note format style

The first indicator position contains a value that is in a formatted or an unformatted style note.

0 - Formatted style

Value 0 indicates that subfield #a contains a

640 0þ#av. 1- Apr. 1970-
640 0þ#a1972-

640

1 - Unformatted style

Value 1 indicates that subfield $\neq a$ contains an unformatted style note.

640 1 $\neq a$ Vols. published for the years 1953-1966

640 1 $\neq a$ Complete in 10 v.

Second Indicator - Undefined

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (\emptyset).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

$\neq a$ - Dates of publication and/or volume designation

Subfield $\neq a$ contains a designation of the beginning/ending date(s) of publication and/or the extent of volumes within a series.

640 1 $\neq a$ Complete in 15 v.

640 1 $\neq a$ Vols. published for the years 1864-1910

$\neq z$ - Source of information

Subfield $\neq z$ contains a citation for the source of the information contained in subfield $\neq a$.

640 1 $\neq a$ Calendar year 1982 pub. in 1983 $\neq zp$. 3

640 1 $\neq a$ Vol. 1 pub. in 1954 $\neq zp$. 2 of cov., v. 15

640 1 $\neq a$ Projected in 6 v. $\neq zv$. 1, p. 316

| $\neq 6$ - Linkage

Subfield $\neq 6$ contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield $\neq 6$ and guidelines for applying it are provided in the 880 *Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

VENTIONS

on unless the subfield ends with an abbreviation, an punctuation.

Field 640 does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 640 1\$b#aPlanned in 2 v.\$zv. 2, CIP info. Vol. 2 pub. in 1985
- 640 1\$b#aComplete in 22 v.\$zv. 3, pref.
- 640 1\$b#aCeased with 2 (1964)
- 640 0\$b#av. 1- Apr. 1970-

Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

- 640 1\$b#aComplete in 16 v.\$zv. 1, introd.

In a formatted style note, three spaces represent the missing part of an open-entry numbering designation followed by additional subfield \$a data.

- | 640 0\$b#av. 1- Apr. 1970-

Display Constant

-Cf. [associated with the content of subfield \$z]

The instruction term *-Cf.* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield \$z.

Content designated field:

- 640 1\$b#aCalendar year 1982 pub. in 1983\$zp. 3

Display example:

Calendar year 1982 pub. in 1983—*Cf.* p. 3

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

- 641 Series Numbering Peculiarities
- 642 Series Numbering Example
- 880 Alternate Graphic Representation

641 Series Numbering Peculiarities (R)

o

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
ø	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#a	Numbering peculiarities note (NR)	<i>M</i>
#z	Source of information (NR)	<i>A</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a note describing irregularities in the report year coverage and/or numbering of a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). It may also contain a citation for the source of the information. Distinct items of information are contained in separate 641 fields. When field 641 is used, field 008/13 (Numbered/unnumbered series) contains code a or c.

Changes or variations in a series numbering that is to be used in a bibliographic record are contained in field 642 (Series Numbering Example). The extent of volumes within a series is contained in field 640 (Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**#a - Numbering peculiarities note**

Subfield #a contains a note describing irregularities in the report year coverage and/or numbering of a series. Information such as double numbering, the existence of issues not included in the regular series numbering, items not published, combined issues or volumes, and numbering that does not begin with number one may be described in this subfield.

641 ø#aEach issue covers: Apr. 1-Mar. 31

641

- 641 \$1\$#aSome items issued: with numeric/alpha or alpha numeric designation (447P; X042); some with double numbering (3092R-3092T); and some with numeric sub-subdivision (825/1)
- 641 \$1\$#aIntrod. and concluding vols. unnumb.
- 641 \$1\$#aNumbering begins with no. 3

#z - Source of information

Subfield #z contains a citation for the source of the information contained in subfield #a.

- 641 \$1\$#aDouble numbering discontinued with t. 179#zt. 179, t.p.
- 641 \$1\$#aNo. 7 never published#zno. 11, t.p. verso
- 641 \$1\$#aNumbering does not begin with v. 1#zLC data base, 8-5-85
- 641 \$1\$#aPublication suspended 1922-29#zUnion list of serials

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation

In the following punctuation conventions, *mark of punctuation* is a period (.), a question mark (?), an exclamation mark (!), or a hyphen (-).

Subfield #a does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the subfield ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 641 \$1\$#aVol. numbering irregular; v. 4 omitted; v. 5 repeated#zpub. letter 7 Nov.
76
- 641 \$1\$#aNumbering begins with v. 10; items published before 1980 unnumb.
#zDeut. Bibl.

Field 641 does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

- 641 \$1\$#aVol. 25 never published#zcall to publisher 1/22/82
- 641 \$1\$#aNumbering repeats each year#zexamination of vols.
- 641 \$1\$#aVols. for the 8th-19th annual meetings called also v. 7-17 (9th and
10th issues combined as v. 8)
- 641 \$1\$#aPublications designated 1st-67th, 1878-1946; 68th ed.- 1947-
- 641 \$1\$#aNo more published?

Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

- 641 \$1\$#aNew series v. 2 (Sept.-Dec. 1837) not issued

Three spaces represent the missing part of an open-entry numbering designation in subfield $\#a$ when it is followed by additional subfield $\#a$ data.

641 $\#\#a$ Reports for 1938- end June 30; 1981- end Sept. 30

Display Constant

—Cf. [*associated with the content of subfield $\#z$*]

The instruction term —Cf. is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield $\#z$.

Content designated field:

641 $\#\#a$ No. 7 never published $\#z$ no. 11, t.p. verso

Display example:

No. 7 never published—Cf. no. 11, t.p. verso

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/13 Numbered/unnumbered series

640 Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation

642 Series Numbering Example

642 Series Numbering Example (R)

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
þ	Undefined	<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
þ	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#a	Series numbering example (NR)	<i>M</i>
#d	Volumes/dates to which series numbering example applies (NR)	(current) <i>O</i> (earlier) <i>M</i>
+5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	<i>M</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the series numbering example that is to be followed in the volume number/sequential designation portion of a series added entry tracing in bibliographic records for individual issues of the series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). When the form of the numbering varies within a series, field 642 is repeated to provide series numbering examples for the different ranges of volumes/dates. Different series numbering examples for different organizations and/or different copies or sets within the same organization are also contained in separate 642 fields.

Field 642 is used only when a numbered series (008/13, Numbered/unnumbered series, code a or c) is to be traced in bibliographic records (645, Series Tracing Practice, subfield #a, code t). Irregularities in series numbering are contained in field 641 (Series Numbering Peculiarities).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT D1**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; ea

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Series numbering example

Subfield #a contains an example of the form of the series numbering that is to be used in a tracing for a series added entry in bibliographic records for individual issues of a series.

Series numbering examples for variations in the form of the numbering for different ranges of volumes/dates or for different organizations are contained in separate 642 fields.

130 \$0+aJEB (Series)
642 \$y#a79/2#5DLC

130 \$0+aReport (Alaska. Dept. of Transportation and Public Facilities)
642 \$y#ano. AK-RD-86-14#5DI

#d - Volumes/dates to which series numbering example applies

Subfield #d contains a statement describing the applicability of the series numbering example. Subfield #d is used only when the series numbering example contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 \$0+aOccasional paper (Howard University. Mental Health Research and Development Center)
642 \$y#ano. 19#ditems published <1982 >#5DLC
642 \$y#av. 3, no. 4#ditems published before <1979 >#5DLC

#5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the series numbering example contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the series numbering example is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 \$0+aMemoirs of the Peabody Museum of American Archaeology and Ethnology, Harvard University
642 \$y#avol. 6#5DLC#5DLC photo-offset reprint

130 \$0+aOccasional paper (McGill University. Centre for East Asian Studies)
642 \$y#ano. 4#5DLC#5MH

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation

Field 642 does not end with a period as a mark of punctuation unless the subfield ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a period.

642 \$y#aE3#5DLC photo-offset reprint

Capitalization

The capitalization of the NUC symbol characters strictly follows that found in *Symbols of American Libraries*.

Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviation and numeric/alphabetic designations.

642 \$y#apublicação no. 13#5DLC

Three spaces represent the missing part of a open-entry numbering designation in subfield #d when it is followed by additional subfield #d data.

642 \$y#ano. 19#ditems published <1982 >#5DLC

Order

The 642 field for a *current* series numbering example precedes the 642 field for an *earlier* series numbering example.

642 \$y#ano. 19#ditems published <1982 >#5DLC

642 \$y#avo. 3, no. 4#ditems published before <1979 >#5DLC

Display Constants

Form of number in series a.e.:

[associated with the content of subfield #a]

Applies to:

[associated with the content of subfield #d]

(...)

[parentheses associated with the content of subfield #5]

Phrases such as *Form of number in series a.e.:* and *Applies to:* are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the content of subfields #a and #d, respectively.

642

Parentheses enclosing the NUC symbol are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #5.

Content designated field:

642 \$y#av. 3, no. 4#items published before <1979 >#5DLC

Display example:

Form of number in series a.e.: v. 3, no. 4 Applies to: items
published before <1979 > (DLC)

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/13 Numbered/unnumbered series

641 Series Numbering Peculiarities

642 Series Tracing Practice

USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data: 4XX (Series Statement) and 8XX (Series Added Entry) fields, subfield #v (Volume number/sequential designation)

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

Symbols of American Libraries

643 Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body (R)

o

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
þ	Undefined	<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
þ	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#a	Place (R)	<i>M</i>
#b	Publisher/issuing body (R)	<i>M</i>
#d	Volumes/dates to which place and publisher/issuing body apply (NR)	(current) <i>O</i> (earlier) <i>M</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the place of publication and the name of the publisher/issuing body of the series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The field may also contain the volumes/dates to which the publication information applies. Multiple place and publisher/issuing body information may be contained in the field if each is appropriate to the series during a particular range of dates/volumes. Multiple place and publisher/issuing body information for different ranges of volumes/dates are contained in separate 643 fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; eac

■ SUBFIELD CODES**#a - Place**

Subfield #a contains a place of publication appropriate to a series during a particular range of dates. Subfield #a is used for the place of publication. A separate subfield #a, Place of publication, is used for the place of publication. A separate subfield #a, Volumes/dates, is used for the volumes/dates.

130 þ0#aColección Tesi
643 þþ#aQuitoþbs.n.

643

130 \$0#aStudies in sociology (Manchester University Press)
643 \$y#London, England#aDover, N.H.#bManchester University Press

#b - Publisher/issuing body

Subfield #b contains the name of the publisher or issuing body for the series. When multiple publisher/issuing body names are appropriate to a series during a particular range of dates/volumes, each is contained in a separate subfield #b. Publisher/issuing body information for different ranges of volumes/dates is contained in separate 643 fields.

130 \$0#aSpanish law texts
643 \$y#Madrid#bJ. & A. Garrigues

130 \$0#aOriginal papers (Bowling Green State University. Social Philosophy
& Policy Center)
643 \$y#Bowling Green, OH#bSocial Philosophy and Policy Center#aNew
Brunswick, USA#bTransaction Books

#d - Volumes/dates to which place and publisher/issuing body apply

Subfield #d contains a statement describing the range of volumes/dates applicable to the place and publisher/issuing body. The use of subfield #d is optional if the place and publisher/issuing body information applies to all items of the series. Each change in place and publisher/issuing body is contained in a separate 643 field.

130 \$0#aSchriftenreihe zur europäischen Integration
643 \$y#Hamburg#bStiftung Europa-Kolleg#bFundament-Verlag Sasse#dBd. 4-
643 \$y#Hamburg#bChristen#bStiftung Europa-Kolleg#d2

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation

In the following punctuation conventions, *mark of punctuation* is a period (.), a question mark (?), an exclamation mark (!), or a hyphen (-).

Subfield #a does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the subfield ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

643 \$y#Stockholm, Sweden#bPoststyrelsen#d1964-66
643 \$y#New York, N.Y.#bRandom House
643 \$y#S.l.#bs.n. (Poitiers : Imp. Aubin)
643 \$y#Cardiff?#bH.M.S.O.

Field 643 field does not end with a period unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a period.

- 643 \$y#aLondon\$bHome Office
- 643 \$y#aSt. Louis\$bCity Art Museum of St. Louis\$items issued after 1908
- 643 \$y#aNew York\$bGolden Press#aRacine, Wis.\$bWestern Pub. Co.

Spacing

One space separates term/abbreviation and numeric/alphabetic designations.

Three spaces represent the missing part of an open-entry numbering designation in subfield \$d when it is followed by additional subfield \$d data.

- 643 \$y#aNew York\$bA.R. Liss\$dnew ser., v. 1- , 1982-

Order

The 643 field for *current* publishing information precedes the 643 field for *earlier* information.

- 643 \$y#aHamburg\$bStiftung Europa-Kolleg\$bFundament-Verlag Sasse\$dBd. 4-
- 643 \$y#aHamburg\$bChristen\$bStiftung Europa-Kolleg\$dBd. 2

Display Constants

Applies to: [associated with the content of subfield \$d]
 AACR 2 imprint punctuation [associated with the content of subfields \$a and \$b]

A phrase such as *Applies to:* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield \$d.

Content designated field:

- 643 \$y#aSt. Louis\$bCity Art Museum of St. Louis\$items issued after 1908

Display example:

St. Louis : City Art Museum of St. Louis
 issued after 1908

643

The AACR 2 punctuation that is associated with imprint data elements is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be generated as display constants associated with the content of subfields **#a** and **#b**.

Content designated field:

643 \$y+\$aBowling Green, OH+\$bSocial Philosophy and Policy Center+\$aNew
Brunswick, USA+\$bTransaction Books

Display example:

Bowling Green, OH : Social Philosophy and Policy Center ; New
Brunswick, USA : Transaction Books

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

*USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data: 4XX (Series Statement) and 8XX (Series Added Entry) fields, subfield **#v** (Volume number/sequential designation)*

644 Series Analysis Practice (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
ø	Undefined	M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
ø	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

‡a	Series analysis practice (NR)	M
‡b	Exceptions to analysis practice (NR)	A
‡d	Volumes/dates to which analysis practice applies (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M
‡5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	M

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a one-character code that indicates a specific organization's analysis practice for a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The code specifies whether all, some, or none of the volumes of a series are analyzed for bibliographic records. The field may also contain the volumes/dates and/or the institution/copy identification to which the practice applies. Field 644 is not used to indicate that a series-like phrase (008/12, Type of series, code c) is not analyzed. Varying analysis practices for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series, for different copies or sets within the same organization, or for different organizations are contained in separate 644 fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Series tracing practice**

Subfield ‡a contains a one-character code that indicates the analysis practice for the series.

- f - Analyzed in full
- p - Analyzed in part
- n - Not analyzed

Varying analysis practices are contained in separate 644 fields.

130 \$0#*a*Munkavédelem, szociálpolitika
 644 \$0#*af*#5DLC

130 \$0#*a*Rapports des campagnes à la mer
 644 \$0#*ap*#5DLC

130 \$0#*a*Monographs of the Society for Research in Child Development
 644 \$0#*an*#*dv*, 49-#5DLC
 644 \$0#*af*#*dv*, 1-48#5DLC

#b - Exceptions to analysis practice

Subfield #b contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the analysis practice code contained in subfield #a does not apply. The analysis practice for the "excepted" items may be recorded in a separate 644 field. Subfield #b is used only when the analysis practice code contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 \$0#*a*Eastern European economics
 644 \$0#*an*#*b*except v. 10, no. 1-3, v. 19, no. 4#5DLC

#d - Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the analysis practice applies. Subfield #d is used only when the analysis practice contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 \$0#*a*Horizons in biochemistry and biophysics
 644 \$0#*af*#*d*analyzable parts#5DLC

#5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the analysis practice contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the analysis practice is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set

of a single organization follows the organization's
 field #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-
 Congress maintains the *Symbols of American*
 .)

reprint

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation

Field 644 does not end with a period as a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a period.

644 \$p#ap#5DLC photo-offset reprint

Capitalization

The code in subfield $\neq a$ is input in lowercase. The capitalization of the NUC symbol characters strictly follows that found in *Symbols of American Libraries*.

644 \$p#ap#5UnM

Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

644 \$p#af#d except no. 6#d5DLC

Three spaces represent the part of an open-entry numbering designation in subfield $\neq d$ when it is preceded or followed by additional subfield $\neq d$ data.

644 \$p#af#d<1984->#5DLC
 644 \$p#ap#d<-1980>#5DLC
 644 \$p#an#dv. 49-#5DLC

Order

The 644 field for *current* analysis practice precedes the 644 field for *earlier* practice.

644 \$p#an#dv. 49-#5DLC
 644 \$p#af#dv. 1-48#5DLC

Display Constants

: Analyzed in full	[associated with code f in subfield $\neq a$]
: Analyzed in part	[associated with code p in subfield $\neq a$]
: Not analyzed	[associated with code n in subfield $\neq a$]
Applies to:	[associated with the content of subfield $\neq d$]
(...)	[parentheses associated with the content of subfield $\neq 5$]

Phrases such as *Analyzed in full*, *Analyzed in part*, or *Not analyzed* are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the code contained in subfield $\neq a$.

644

A phrase such as *Applies to:* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #d.

Content designated field:

644 ȳȳ#af#danalyzable parts#5DLC

Display example:

f: Analyzed in full Applies to: analyzable parts (DLC)

Parentheses enclosing the NUC symbol are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of each subfield #5.

Content designated field:

644 ȳȳ#af#5DLC#5MH

Display example:

f: Analyzed in full (DLC) (MH)

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

Symbols of American Libraries

645 Series Tracing Practice (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
		<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
		<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#a	Series tracing practice (NR)	<i>M</i>
#d	Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies (NR)	(current) <i>O</i> (earlier) <i>M</i>
#5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	<i>M</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a one-character code that indicates a specific organization's tracing practice for a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The code specifies whether the series is used as a series added entry or as an untraced series note in bibliographic records. The field may also contain the volumes/dates and/or the institution/copy identification to which the tracing practice applies. Field 645 is not used to indicate that a series-like phrase (008/12, Type of series, code c) is not traced. Varying tracing practices for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series, for different copies or sets within the same organization, or for different organizations are contained in separate 645 fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**#a - Series tracing practice**

Subfield #a contains a one-character code that indicates the series added entry tracing practice in bibliographic records.

- t - Traced as a series added entry
- n - Not traced as a series added entry

645

Varying tracing practices are contained in separate 645 fields.

130 \$0+aBerkeley-Duke occasional papers on the second economy in the USSR
645 \$y#at#5DLC

130 \$0+aSeria "Motywacje"
645 \$y#an#5DLC

#d - Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the tracing practice applies. Subfield #d is used only when the tracing practice contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items in the series.

130 \$0+aBiblioteca del cielo
645 \$y#at#items cataloged after Dec. 31, 1980#5DLC
645 \$y#an#items cataloged before Jan. 1, 1981#5DLC

#5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the tracing practice contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the series tracing practice is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 \$0+aPoint de vue (Yaoundé, Cameroon)
645 \$y#an#5DLC

130 \$0+aColección R
645 \$y#an#5DLC#5MH

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation

Field 645 does not end with a period as a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a period.

645 \$y#at#5DLC photo-offset reprint

Capitalization

The code in subfield $\#a$ is input in lowercase. The capitalization of the NUC symbol characters strictly follows that found in *Symbols of American Libraries*.

645 $\$y\#at\#5Sd$

Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

645 $\$y\#an\#dBk. 1-30\#DLC$

Three spaces represent the missing part of an open-entry numbering designation in subfield $\#d$ when it is followed by additional subfield $\#d$ data.

645 $\$y\#at\#d<1983- >\#5DLC$

Order

The 645 field for *current* tracing practice precedes the 645 field for *earlier* practice.

645 $\$y\#at\#d$ items cataloged after Dec. 31, 1980 $\#5DLC$

645 $\$y\#an\#d$ items cataloged before Jan. 1, 1981 $\#5DLC$

Display Constants

- : Traced [associated with code t in subfield $\#a$]
- : Untraced [associated with code n in subfield $\#a$]
- Applies to: [associated with the content of subfield $\#d$]
- (...) [parentheses associated with the content of subfield $\#5$]

Terms such as *Traced* or *Untraced* are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the code contained in subfield $\#a$.

A phrase such as *Applies to:* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield $\#d$.

Content designated field:

645 $\$y\#an\#d$ items cataloged before Jan. 1, 1981 $\#5DLC$

Display example:

n: Untraced Applies to: items cataloged before Jan. 1, 1981 (DLC)

645

Parentheses enclosing the NUC symbol are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of each subfield #5.

Content designated field:

645 \$y#at#5DLC#5IEN

Display example:

t: Traced (DLC) (IEN)

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

USMARC Formats for Bibliographic Data: 4XX (Series Statement) and 8XX (Series Added Entry) fields

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

Symbols of American Libraries

646 Series Classification Practice (R)*O*Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
þ	Undefined	<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
þ	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#a	Series classification practice (NR)	<i>M</i>
#d	Volumes/dates to which classification practice applies (NR)	(current) <i>O</i> (earlier) <i>M</i>
+5	Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	<i>M</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a one-character code that indicates a specific organization's classification practice for a series named in the 1XX field of an established heading record for a series (008/09, Kind of record, code a). The code specifies whether the volumes in the series are classified as a collection, with the main series, or separately. The field may also contain the volumes/dates and/or the institution/copy identification to which the classification practice applies. Field 646 is not used to indicate that a series-like phrase (008/12, Type of series, code c) is not classified. Varying classification practices for different ranges of volumes/dates within a series, for different copies or sets within the same organization, or for different organizations are contained in separate 646 fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Series classification practice
Subfield #a contains a one-character code
series.

s - Volumes are classified separately
Code s indicates that no classification
each volume in the series is classified

c - Volumes are classified as a collection

m - Volumes are classified with main or other series

Codes c and m indicate that a classification number is assigned to the series. The call number for the series is contained in one of the call number fields (050, 060, 070, 082) or in a locally defined call number field (09X) in the established series heading record.

Varying classification practices are contained in separate 646 fields.

130 \$0+aBibliothèque des "Temps nouveau" (Series)

646 \$y+as#5DLC

[No class number assigned to series classified separately.]

100 \$0+aDostoyevsky, Fyodor, #d1821-1881.#tWorks.#f1972

646 \$y+ac#5DLC

050 \$y+aPG3325#b.A1 1972

130 \$0+aTrudy Instituta eksperimental'noi meteorologii.#pSeriia "Fizika nizhnei atmosfery"

646 \$y+am#5DLC

130 \$0+aTechnical report (Cooperative National Park Resources Studies Unit, Hawaii)

646 \$y+as#5DLC

646 \$y+ac#5DI

090 \$y+aQH198.H3#bC66#5DI

#d - Volumes/dates to which classification practice applies

Subfield #d contains a statement identifying those items in the series to which the classification practice applies. Subfield #d is used only when the classification practice contained in subfield #a does not apply to all items of the series.

130 \$0+aMonographs of the Society for Research in Child Development

646 \$y+ac#dv. 1-35, v. 49-#5DLC

646 \$y+as#dv. 36-48#5DLC

050 \$y+aLB1103#b.S6#dv. 1-35, v. 49-

#5 - Institution/copy to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization that uses the classification practice contained in subfield #a. The NUC symbol for each organization using the classification practice is contained in a separate subfield #5. An NUC symbol may be followed by copy or set identification. Administrative unit or special collection identification may be given in parentheses after the copy information. Each copy or set identification for multiple copies within a single organization follows the organization's NUC symbol contained in a separate subfield #5. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.)

130 \$0+aI.U.B. symposium series

646 \$y+as#5DLC#5ICU

130 \$0+aAmericana Germanica
 646 \$y#as#5DLC#5DLC photo-offset reprint

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation

Field 646 does not end with a period as a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or other data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

646 \$y#as#5DLC photo-offset reprint

Capitalization

The code in subfield #a is input in lowercase. The capitalization of the NUC symbol characters strictly follows that found in *Symbols of American Libraries*.

646 \$y#ac#5NjP

Spacing

One space separates terms/abbreviations and numeric/alphabetic designations.

646 \$y#ac#dv. 1-19#5DLC
 646 \$y#as#dv. 20-#5DLC

Three spaces represent the missing part of an open-entry numbering designation in subfield #d when it is followed by additional subfield #d data.

646 \$y#ac#d< -1981>#5DLC
 646 \$y#am#d<1980- , 1983-1984>#5DLC
 646 \$y#as#d<160- >#5DLC

Order

The 646 field for *current* classification practice precedes the 646 field for *earlier* practice.

646 \$y#ac#dv. 1-35, v. 49-#5DLC
 646 \$y#as#dv. 36-48#5DLC

646

Display Constants

:	Classified separately	[associated with code s in subfield #a]
:	Classified as a collection	[associated with code c in subfield #a]
:	Classified with main or other series	[associated with code m in subfield #a]
Applies to:		[associated with the content of subfield #a]
(...)		[parentheses associated with the content of subfield #5]

Phrases such as *Classified separately*, *Classified as a collection*, or *Classified with main or other series* are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the code contained in subfield #a.

A phrase such as *Applies to:* is not carried in the USMARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield #d.

Content designated field:

646 \$y\$fas#dv. 20-\$5DLC

Display example:

s: Classified separately Applies to: v. 20- (DLC)

Parentheses enclosing the NUC symbol are not carried in the USMARC record. They may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of each subfield #5.

Content designated field:

646 \$y\$fac#5DLC#5DI

Display example:

c: Classified as a collection (DLC) (DI)

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

050 Library of Congress Call Number
090 Local Call Number

OTHER RELATED DOCUMENT

Symbols of American Libraries

66X-68X Notes—General Information

*National Level
Requirement*

667 Nonpublic General Note (R)	O
670 Source Data Found (R)	A
675 Source Data Not Found (NR)	O
678 Epitome (NR)	O
680 Public General Note (R)	O
681 Subject Example Tracing Note (R)	O
682 Deleted Heading Information (NR)	O
688 Application History Note (R)	O

DEFINITION AND SCOPE

General notes are contained in field 667 (Nonpublic General Note) or 680 (Public General Note). The remaining 66X-68X fields are used for specialized information. Except for field 680, these notes often are not written in a form adequate for public display.

Alternate Graphic Representation

Subfield #6 (Linkage) is defined for all of the note fields. The description of subfield #6 in field 667 (Nonpublic General Note) also applies to each of these fields. It will be added to the other fields when they are reissued for other changes.

| 667 Nonpublic General Note (R)*O*Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
b	Undefined	<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
b	Undefined	<i>M</i>

Subfield Code

#a	Nonpublic general note (NR)	<i>M</i>
#5	Institution to which field applies (R)	<i>A</i>
#6	Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a note that provides general information about a 1XX heading for which a specialized note field has not been defined. The information may be permanent or temporary and may or may not be written in a form that is adequate for public display. Each distinct item of information is contained in a separate 667 field.

A general note for public display is contained in field 680 (Public General Note).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each co

■ SUBFIELD CODE**#a - Nonpublic general note**

Subfield #a contains a nonpublic general note.

100 10#aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus,#d175
 #nK. 426, #rC minor

667 #b#aLater arr. for string orchestra as p:

#5 - Institution to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization to which the note applies. It identifies an institute-specific note that may not apply to a universal use of the heading. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency.) Subfield #5 is always the last subfield in the field.

130 \$0#Quarto book (Quarto Marketing Ltd.)

667 \$b#Give phrase as quoted note if Quarto Marketing Ltd. does not appear in the body of the description.#5DLC

#6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

680 Public General Note

880 Alternate Graphic Representation

Symbols of American Libraries

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

667 *Name Usage or Scope Note [REDEFINED]*
 #a *Usage or scope note [REDEFINED]*

In 1991, this field was redefined as a nonpublic general note and its scope was expanded for use in authority records for both names and subjects.

670 Source Data Found (R)

A

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	M
b	Undefined	M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined	M
b	Undefined	M

Subfield Codes

#a	Source citation (NR)	M
#b	Information found (NR)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a citation for a consulted source in which information is found about the 1XX heading in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f). The field may also include the information found in the source. Each source citation is contained in a separate 670 field.

A citation for a consulted source that yielded no information about the heading is contained in field 675 (Source Data Not Found).

The citations and information in this field are often not written in a form adequate for public user display.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (b).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**#a - Source citation**

Subfield #a contains a citation for a published work or a description of any source or action that provided information about the heading, e.g., a telephone call to a publisher. The citation includes enough information to identify the work, such as the author, title, and imprint date. When the author is the same as the 1XX heading, one of the following may be used in the citation: *His, Her, Author's* (gender unknown), or *Its* (not a personal name). When a 100 heading is used for more

than one person (008/32, Undifferentiated personal name, code b), subfield **#a** may contain a descriptive term for an author enclosed within brackets, e.g., [Author of Ireland].

150 \$0#**a**Sanitation Workers Strike, Memphis, Tenn., 1968
 670 \$b#**a**Work cat.: Beifuss, J.T. At the river I stand, 1985

110 20#**a**Oxon Hill Manor (Md.)
 670 \$b#**a**Phone call to National Register of Historic Places

100 10#**a**Smith, Howard
 670 \$b#**a**[Added entry of Inside Japan]
 670 \$b#**a**Inside Japan, 1981:#bverso t.p. (Howard Smith)
 670 \$b#**a**[Author of Ireland]
 670 \$b#**a**His Ireland, 1974:#bt.p. (Howard Smith)

#b - Information found

Subfield **#b** contains a parenthetical statement of the information found in the source. A statement of the location of the information within the source, such as *cover*, *t.p.*, *foreword*, may also be contained in subfield **#b**. Multiple occurrences of location/information found within the same source are contained in a single subfield **#b**.

100 10#**a**Defoe, Daniel,#d1661?-1731
 670 \$b#**a**InU/Wing STC files#b(usage: a lay-hand in the country)

110 20#**a**Twin City Federal
 670 \$b#**a**Lund, D. A. Billions for homes, c1980:#bt.p. (TCF) verso t.p.
 (Twin City Federal) p. 11 (founded 4-2-23)

110 20#**a**Bentley Historical Library
 670 \$b#**a**Billington, R. A. Local history is ... 1974.
 670 \$b#**a**Its Guide to manuscripts in the Bentley Historical Library, 1976:
 #bt.p. (Bentley Historical Library, Michigan Historical Collections,
 Univ. of Mich.)

130 \$0#**a**AFRI research report
 670 \$b#**a**AFRI research report, no. 5 (1971):#bt.p.

#6 - Linkage

Subfield **#6** contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield **#6** and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation and Spacing

Punctuation and spacing is a matter of judgment. The examples used in the *Guidelines* area reflect current Library of Congress practice.

Order

The first 670 field in a record should contain the citation for the work for which the 1XX heading is being established whenever there is one. Other sources may be listed in any order.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

008/32 Undifferentiated personal name
675 Source Data Not Found
880 Alternate Graphic Representation

675 Source Data Not Found (NR)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	
↳	Undefined	

M
M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	
↳	Undefined	

M
M

Subfield Code

#a	Source citation (R)	
#6	Linkage (NR)	

M
A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a citation for a consulted source in which no information is found about the 1XX heading in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f). In unusual instances, the field may also include questionable information that is found in the source (e.g., when the name found may refer to a different person). Multiple source citations are contained in a single 675 field.

A citation for a consulted source that yielded information about the heading is contained in field 670 (Source Data Found).

The citations and information in this field are often not written in a form adequate for public user display.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (↳).

■ SUBFIELD CODE**#a - Source citation**

Subfield #a contains a citation for a published work or a description of any source that provided no information about the heading. Each source citation is contained in a separate subfield #a.

151 ↳0#aSkarvsnes (Antarctic regions)

675 ↳b#aLippincott;#aRand McNally;#aWeb. geog.;#aRand McNally new international atlas

675

110 20#*a*Ironmaster's House (Pa.)

675 #*b*#*a*Nat. reg. hist. pl.

100 10#*a*Foote, Arthur, #d1853-1937.#*t*Duets, #*m*piano, 4 hands, #*n*op. 21

675 #*b*#*a*New Grove; #*a*Thompson, 10th ed.

100 10#*a*Miller, M.

675 #*b*#*a*WW in world Jewry, 1965; #*a*Academic ww, 1973-74; #*a*WW in educ., 1974

130 10#*a*Headline series

675 #*b*#*a*Harsch, Joseph C. Germany at war, 1942: ser. t.p. (Headline books)

#6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the 880 *Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation

Multiple source citations are separated from each other by a semicolon.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

670 Source Data Found

880 Alternate Graphic Representation

678 Epitome (NR)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	
þ	Undefined	

<i>M</i>
<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	
þ	Undefined	

<i>M</i>
<i>M</i>

Subfield Code

#a	Epitome (R)	
----	-------------	--

<i>M</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains biographical, historical, or other information about the 1XX heading in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f). For example, the information may be a summary of the essential *source data found* from a manual authority record that is being retrospectively converted to machine-readable form. Citations for sources consulted during or after the conversion of the manual record are contained in field 670 (Source Data Found) or 675 (Source Data Not Found).

The information in this field is primarily intended to guide catalogers and is often not written in a form adequate for public user display.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each co

■ SUBFIELD CODE**#a - Epitome**

Subfield #a contains a summary of the essential information about the heading. Each distinct item is a separate subfield #a.

100 10#aJordan, Joseph A.
678 ##aM.D., M.R.C.O.G.;#aDept. of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Birmingham
Maternity Hosp., Queen Elizabeth Medical Center, Edgbaston

100 10#aHaupt, Georges
678 ##ab. 1928
670 ##aHis aspects of international socialism, 1871-1914:#bCIP pref. (b.
Szatmar; wrote in Rumanian, Hungarian, Russian; moved to Paris 1958;
d. 1978)

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation

Multiple distinct items of information are separated from each other by a semicolon.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

670 Source Data Found
675 Source Data Not Found

| 680 Public General Note (R)

*O*Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined Undefined	M M
<u>Second</u>	Undefined Undefined	M M

Subfield Codes

#a	Heading or subdivision term (R)	A
#i	Explanatory text (R)	M
#5	Institution to which field applies (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a note that provides general information about a 1XX heading for which a specialized note field has not been defined. Each distinct item of information is contained in a separate 680 field. The note is written in a form adequate for public display. A general note not for public display is contained in field 667 (Nonpublic General Note).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**#a - Heading or subdivision term**

Subfield #a contains a heading or subdivision term that is used to amplify the text of the note contained in subfield #i (Explanatory text).

008/11 a /Library of Congress Subject Headings]
 150 ØØ#aFirc-damp
 680 ØØ#iHere are entered works on methane as a combustible gas formed
 in coal mines. Works on methane present in a stratum of coal are
 entered under#aCoalbed methane.

#i - Explanatory text

Subfield #i contains the text of the public general note. Subfield #i is repeated when subfield #a elements are embedded in the text.

- 008/11 a [Library of Congress Subject Headings]
 150 \$0#aCommerce
 360 \$b#iisubdivision#aCommerce#iunder names of countries, cities, etc., and ethnic groups.
 680 \$b#iHere are entered works on trade, both foreign and domestic.
 680 \$b#iFor commerce of countries, cities, etc., assign headings of the type
 [place]—Commerce, further subdivided by place, if appropriate. If so
 subdivided, assign a second heading with the place names reversed, e.g.,
 1. Canada—Commerce—United States. 2. United States—Commerce—Canada.
- 008/10 c [AACR 2]
 110 20#aWorld Bank
 680 \$b#iHere are entered works on the World Bank, an entity that consists of the common
 staff and facilities of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development
 and International Development Association. Works dealing with either of these latter
 organizations are entered under the appropriate name heading.
- 008/11 c [Medical Subject Headings]
 150 \$0#aAmbulatory Surgery
 680 \$b#iSurgery performed on an outpatient basis. May be hospital-based or performed
 in an office or surgicenter.
 680 \$b#ioutpatient surg performed in MD's office, surgicenter or hosp; only /econ /methods
 /psychol /stand /trends /util (if by MeSH definition)

#5 - Institution to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization to which the note applies. It identifies an institution-specific note that may not apply to a universal use of the heading. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* and is the authoritative agency). Subfield #5 is always the last subfield in the field.

- 008/11 a [Art and Architecture Thesaurus]
 150 \$0#aBaroque
 680 \$b#iWhen Baroque is combined with style, it appears in the form#aBaroque
 style.#iMay be combined with terms in the Objects facet, e.g., sculpture.
 680 \$b#iMay be combined with geographic name in the form#aBaroque sculpture—
 Germany.#5CaQMCCA

#6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the *880 Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

667 Nonpublic General Note
880 Alternate Graphic Representation
Symbols of American Libraries

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

680 *Subject Scope Note [REDEFINED]*
†a *Subject heading or subdivision term [REDEFINED]*

In 1991, this field was redefined as a public general note and its scope was expanded for use in authority records for both subjects and names.

681 Subject Example Tracing Note (R)

*O*Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	
b	Undefined	

M
M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	
b	Undefined	

M
*M*Subfield Codes

‡a	Subject heading or subdivision term (R)	
‡i	Explanatory text (R)	
‡6	Linkage (NR)	

M
M
*A***FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a note that documents the use of the 1XX subject heading or subdivision term in an established heading record or a subdivision record (008/09, Kind of record, code a, d, or f) as an example or reference in 260 Complex See Reference, 360 Complex See Also Reference, and/or 680 Public General Note fields of another established heading or reference record. It permits the updating of the 260, 360, or 680 field when a change is made to the 1XX heading.

The information in this field is often not written in a form adequate for public user display.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains

■ SUBFIELD CODES**‡a - Subject heading or subdivision term**

Subfield ‡a contains the 1XX heading of the established heading record or subdivision record in the 260, 360, and/or 680 fields in which an established heading or subdivision record is used.

008/09	a	{established heading record}
151	b0	‡aUnited States‡xHistory‡yQueen Ann
681	b	‡iExample under‡aWar

008/09 a [established heading record]
 150 \$0# a War
 360 \$b# subdivision \$a Claims #i under specific wars; and specific wars,
 battles, etc., e.g. #a Russo-Japanese War, 1904-1905; United
 States—History—Queen Anne's War, 1702-1713; Gettysburg, Battle
 of, 1863

#i - Explanatory text

Subfield #i contains text, such as *Example under [...]* and *Note under [...]*, that indicates how the established subject heading is used in the record for the heading referred to in subfield #a.

008/09 a [established heading record]
 110 20# a League of Nations #x Officials and employees
 681 \$b# i Example under reference from #a Officials and employees
 681 \$b# ii Note under #a Public officers

008/09 b [reference record (untraced reference)]
 150 \$0# a Officials and employees
 260 \$b# subdivision #a Officials and employees #i under names of individual
 government agencies, names of colleges and universities, names of
 countries, cities etc.; and under certain subjects, e.g. #a Courts—
 Officials and employees; League of Nations—Officials and employees;
 State governments—Officials and employees; Trade-unions—Officials
 and employees

008/09 a [established heading record]
 150 \$0# a Public officers
 680 \$b# i Here are entered general works. Works on public officers of a
 particular jurisdiction are entered under the heading for the
 jurisdiction with subdivision #a Officials and employees, #i e.g. #a League
 of Nations—Officials and employees; United States—Officials and
 employees

#6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the 880 *Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

260 Complex See Reference—Subject
 360 Complex See Also Reference—Subjct
 680 Public General Note
 880 Alternate Graphic Representation

682 Deleted Heading Information (NR)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
		<i>M</i>

<u>Second</u>	Undefined	<i>M</i>
		<i>M</i>

Subfield Codes

#i	Explanatory text (R)	<i>M</i>
#a	Replacement heading (R)	<i>A</i>

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains text that explains why an established heading record or a subdivision record (008, Kind of record, code a, d, or f) has been deleted from an authority file. The field may also contain the replacement heading(s). Field 682 is appropriate only when Leader/05 (Record status) contains code d (Record deleted, other).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ INDICATORS**

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (Ø).

■ SUBFIELD CODES**#a - Replacement heading**

Subfield #a contains the heading that replaces
heading is contained in a separate subfield #a.

Leader/5 d [Deleted (other)]
 150 ØØ#aPaleontologists, American, [Gen]
 682 ØØ+iThis heading has been replaced
 #aPaleontologists—[place]#ifor w
 records are not made.

#i - Explanatory text

Subfield #i contains the explanatory text of the note. The text may be broken up by subfield #a data and may be only a connector term, such as *and*.

Leader/5 d [Deleted (other)]

110 10#aUnited States.#bEmbassy.#bJapan

682 ##iThis heading has been removed from the subject authority file
because it is not a valid AACR 2 heading.

Leader/5 d [Deleted (other)]

151 \$0#aValley Forge National Historical Park (Pa.)

682 ##iThis heading has been removed from the subject authority file
because it is covered by an identical heading in the name
authority file (n81-18255).

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

Leader/05 Record status

| 688 Application History Note (R)

O

Indicators

<u>First</u>	Undefined		
↳	Undefined		M

<u>Second</u>	Undefined		
↳	Undefined		M

Subfield Codes

#a	Application history note (NR)		
#5	Institution to which field applies (R)		M
#6	Linkage (NR)		A

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains information that documents changes in the application of the 1XX heading. The field may contain such historical information as when a topical term or a geographic name became valid for subject purposes, earlier forms of the heading, and the period during which each earlier form was valid.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (↳).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

#a - Application history note

Subfield #a contains an application history note.

008/11 c [Medical Subject Headings]
 150 ↳#a Cyclohexanones
 688 ↳#i(91)75; was see under CYCLOHEXANES 1975-90

008/11 r [Art and Architecture Thesaurus]
 150 ↳#a collage
 450 ↳#a collage technique
 680 ↳#i Use for the technique of making compositions in two dimensions or very low relief by gluing paper, fabrics, photographs or other materials onto a flat surface. If heavy three-dimensional objects dominate, use "assemblage." If the constituent fragments form a somewhat unified image, use "montage."

008/11 a /*Library of Congress Subject Headings*
150 \$0‡aChild abuse
450 \$0‡wnnen‡aCruelty to children
688 \$0‡acstab. 1975; heading was: Cruelty to children [1952-1965]

#5 - Institution to which field applies

Subfield #5 contains the National Union Catalog (NUC) symbol of the organization to which the note applies. It identifies an institution-specific note that may not apply to a universal application history for the heading. (The NUC symbol is an authoritative-agency data element. The Library of Congress maintains the *Symbols of American Libraries* is the authoritative agency.) Subfield #5 is always the last subfield in the field.

#6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 contains data that link pairs of fields that are alternate graphic representations of each other. It contains the tag number of an associated field and an occurrence number. A complete description of subfield #6 and guidelines for applying it are provided in the 880 *Alternate Graphic Representation* section.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation and Spacing

Punctuation and spacing are matters of judgment.

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

880 Alternate Graphic Representation
Symbols of American Libraries

0 Alternate Graphic Representation (R)*A*Indicators

<u>:irst</u>	Same as associated field	<i>M</i>
<u>:cond</u>	Same as associated field	<i>M</i>

Field Codes

#6	Linkage (NR)	<i>M</i>
#a-z	Same as associated field	<i>M</i>
#0-5	Same as associated field	<i>M</i>
7-9		

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the fully content-designated alternate graphic representation of data that is contained in another field of the same record. Field 880 is linked to the associated roman-character field subfield #6 (Linkage). A subfield #6 in the associated field links that field to the 880 field. When associated field does not exist in the record, field 880 is constructed as if it did and a reserved occurrence number is used to indicate this special situation. The data in field 880 need not be totally in nonroman alphabet.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Field 880 and the associated field both contain a subfield #6 (Linkage). Separate guidelines are provided in this section for applying subfield #6 in field 880 and in associated fields.

INDICATORS [Field 880]

The indicators in field 880 have the same meaning as and are not described in this section. See the descrip

SUBFIELD CODES [Field 880]

The subfields in field 880 are the same as those field #6 (Linkage). Only subfield #6, which for the 880 this section. For a description of all other subfields, see

#6 - Linkage [In field 880]

Subfield #6 contains a linking tag and an occurrence number that link the 880 field to the associated roman-character field. In field 880, subfield #6 also contains a code that identifies the first alternate graphic character set encountered in a left-to-right scan of the field. It may also contain a code signaling that the orientation for a display of the field is right to left. In field 880, subfield #6 is structured as follows:

<linking tag>-<occurrence number>/<identification of alternate graphic character set>/<field orientation code>

Subfield #6 is always the first subfield in the field.

Linking tag and occurrence number – The *linking tag* part contains the tag number of the associated field and is always three characters in length. This is followed immediately by a hyphen and the two-digit *occurrence number* part. A different occurrence number is assigned to each set of associated fields within a single record. The function of an occurrence number is to permit the matching of the associated fields, not to sequence the fields within the record. An occurrence number may be assigned at random for each associated fields set. An occurrence number of less than two digits is right justified and the unused position contains a zero. When there is no associated field to which field 880 is linked, the occurrence number in subfield #6 is 00. The linking tag part will contain the tag the associated field would have had if it had existed in the record.

100 10#6880-01#aHeading in roman form

880 10#6100-01/(2/1#aHeading in Hebrew script linked to associated field

880 10#6675-00/(2/r#aSource citation in Hebrew script

[The second 880 field is not linked to an associated field. The occurrence number is 00.]

Identification of alternate graphic character set – The occurrence number is followed immediately by a slash (/) and the *identification of alternate graphic character set*. This code identifies the first alternate character set encountered in a left-to-right scan of the field. It consists of the Intermediate and Final characters of the standard escape sequence that designates the alternate graphic character set. This code is also carried in field 066\$c (Character Sets Present, Alternate graphic character set identification). (See *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes* for a description of the Intermediate and Final characters of the standard escape sequences used in USMARC records).

880 10#6100-01/(2/r#aHeading in Hebrew script

[The (2 identifies the Basic Hebrew character set.]

Orientation code – In a USMARC record, the contents of field 880 are always recorded in their logical order, from the first character to the last, regardless of field orientation. For a display of the field, the default field orientation is left to right. When the field contains text that has a right-to-left orientation, the identification of the alternate graphic character set part is followed by a slash (/) and the *field orientation code*. The USMARC field orientation code is the letter r. When the text does not have a right-to-left orientation, the field orientation code and the preceding slash are omitted. (See *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes* for a detailed description of field orientation.)

880 10#6675-00/(2/r#aSource citation in Hebrew script

[The r indicates the right-to-left orientation of the Hebrew script.]

■ SUBFIELD CODES [*Associated fields*]

A subfield $\#6$ (Linkage), which contains two elements, is added to an associated field to link it to the alternate graphic representation in a field 880. The subfield $\#6$ in the associated field is described in this section.

$\#6$ - Linkage [*In associated fields*]

Subfield $\#6$ contains a linking tag and an occurrence number that link an associated roman field to the 880 field that contains the same data in nonroman characters. In associated roman fields, subfield $\#6$ is structured as follows:

<linking tag>-<occurrence number>

Subfield $\#6$ is always the first subfield in the field.

Linking tag and occurrence number – The *linking tag* part contains field tag 880. This is followed immediately by a hyphen and the two-digit *occurrence number* part. A different occurrence number is assigned to each set of associated fields within a single record. The function of an occurrence number is to permit the matching of the associated fields, not to sequence the fields within the record. An occurrence number may be assigned at random for each associated fields set. An occurrence number of less than two digits is right justified and the unused position contains a zero.

100 10 $\#$ 6880-01 $\#$ aHeading in roman form
880 10 $\#$ 6100-01/(N $\#$ aHeading in Cyrillic script

■ EXAMPLES:

Although not shown in the examples, the nonroman character strings within each 880 field are preceded and followed by the appropriate escape sequences that control the character sets in a record. These escape sequences are specified and illustrated in the *USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes*.

066 ॥॥ $\#$ c(N
100 10 $\#$ 6880-01 $\#$ aZemcovskii, I. I. $\#$ q(Izali \check{I} Iosifovich)
880 10 $\#$ 6100-01/(N $\#$ aЗемцовский, И. И.Е $\#$ q(Изалий Иосифович)

066 ॥॥ $\#$ c(2
100 00 $\#$ aGreenhauff, Charles
400 10 $\#$ 6880-01 $\#$ aGrinhof, Ychoshua $\#$ a
880 10 $\#$ 6400-01/(2/r $\#$ aגִּנְהָוָעַף, יְחֹשָׁעַ
[The *r* in field 880 $\#$ 6 indicates the right-to-left orientation of the Hebrew script.]

Cross reference display example:

גִּנְהָוָעַף, יְחֹשָׁעַ
search under: Greenhauff, Charles

RELATED USMARC DOCUMENT/FIELD

066 Character Sets Present
USMARC Authority fields for which subfield $\#6$ is defined
USMARC Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, Tapes

APPENDIXES

- A - Table of Content Designators
- B - Obsolete and Previously Used Content Designators
- C - Summary of Data Coding Interdependencies
- D - Full Record Examples
- E - Alphabetical List of Ambiguous Headings
- F - Initial Definite and Indefinite Articles
- G - Content Designator Terminology Changes

Appendix A

Table of Content Designators

*National Level
Requirement*

LEADER			
00-04	Logical record length		<i>M</i>
05	Record status		<i>M</i>
	a Increase in encoding level		<i>A</i>
	c Corrected or revised		<i>A</i>
	d Deleted (other)		<i>A</i>
	n New		<i>A</i>
	s Deleted; heading split into two or more headings		<i>A</i>
	x Deleted; heading replaced by another heading		<i>A</i>
06	Type of record		<i>M</i>
	z Authority data		<i>M</i>
07-09	Undefined character positions		<i>M</i>
10	Indicator count		<i>M</i>
11	Subfield code count		<i>M</i>
12-16	Base address of data		<i>M</i>
17	Encoding level		<i>M</i>
	n Complete authority record		<i>A</i>
	o Incomplete authority record		<i>A</i>
18-19	Undefined character positions		<i>M</i>
20-23	<i>Entry map</i>		<i>M</i>
20	Length of the length-of-field portion		<i>M</i>
21	Length of the starting-character-position portion		<i>M</i>
22	Length of the implementation-defined portion		<i>M</i>
23	Undefined Entry map character position		<i>M</i>
DIRECTORY			
00-02	Tag		<i>M</i>
03-06	Field length		<i>M</i>
07-11	Starting character position		<i>M</i>
001	CONTROL NUMBER (NR)		<i>M</i>
	This field has no indicators or subfield codes.		
005	DATE AND TIME OF LATEST TRANSACTION (NR)		<i>M</i>
	This field has no indicators or subfield codes.		
008	FIXED-LENGTH DATA ELEMENTS (NR)		<i>M</i>
00-05	Date entered on file		<i>M</i>
06	Direct/indirect geographic subdivision		<i>O</i>
	þ Not subdivided geographically		<i>O</i>
	d Subdivided geographically—direct		<i>O</i>
	i Subdivided geographically—indirect		<i>O</i>
	n Not applicable		<i>O</i>

Appendix A

*National Level
Requirement*

008/07	Romanization scheme	O
	a International standard	O
	b National standard	O
	c National library association standard	O
	d National library or bibliographic agency standard	O
	e Local standard	O
	f Standard of unknown origin	O
	g Conventional romanization or conventional form of name in language of cataloging agency	O
	n Not applicable	O
08	Undefined character position	O
09	Kind of record	O
	a Established heading record	M
	b Reference record (untraced reference)	A
	c Reference record (traced reference)	A
	d Subdivision record	A
	e Node label record	A
	f Established heading and subdivision record	A
	g Reference and subdivision record	A
10	Descriptive cataloging rules	A
	a Earlier rules	M
	b AACR 1	A
	c AACR 2	A
	d AACR 2 compatible heading	A
	z Other	A
	n Not applicable	A
11	Subject heading system/thesaurus	A
	a Library of Congress Subject Headings	M
	b LC subject headings for children's literature	A
	c Medical Subject Headings	A
	d National Agricultural Library subject authority file	A
	k Canadian Subject Headings	A
	r Art and Architecture Thesaurus	A
	v Répertoire des vedettes-matière	A
	z Other	A
	n Not applicable	A
12	Type of series	A
	a Monographic series	M
	b Multipart item	A
	c Series-like phrase	A
	z Other	A
	n Not applicable	A
13	Numbered/unnumbered series	A
	a Numbered series	M
	b Unnumbered series	A
	c Series numbering varies	A
	n Not applicable	A

Appendix A

National Level Requirement

008/14	Heading use—main or added entry	<i>M</i>
	a Heading is appropriate for use as main or added entry	<i>A</i>
	b Heading is not appropriate for use as main or added entry	<i>A</i>
15	Heading use—subject added entry	<i>M</i>
	a Heading is appropriate for use as subject added entry	<i>A</i>
	b Heading is not appropriate for use as subject added entry	<i>A</i>
16	Heading use—series added entry	<i>M</i>
	a Heading is appropriate for use as series added entry	<i>A</i>
	b Heading is not appropriate for use as series added entry	<i>A</i>
17	Type of subject subdivision	<i>O</i>
	a Topical	<i>O</i>
	b Form	<i>O</i>
	c Chronological	<i>O</i>
	d Geographic	<i>O</i>
	e Language	<i>O</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>O</i>
18-27	Undefined character positions	<i>O</i>
28	Type of government agency	<i>O</i>
	b Not a government agency	<i>O</i>
	a Autonomous or semi-autonomous component of the Soviet Union, Yugoslavia, or Malaysia	<i>O</i>
	c Multilocal	<i>O</i>
	f Federal/national	<i>O</i>
	i International intergovernmental	<i>O</i>
	l Local	<i>O</i>
	m Multistate	<i>O</i>
	o Government agency—type undetermined	<i>O</i>
	s State, provincial, territorial, dependent, etc.	<i>O</i>
	z Other type of government agency	<i>O</i>
	u Unknown if heading is government agency	<i>O</i>
29	Reference evaluation	<i>..</i>
	a Tracings are consistent with the heading	
	b Tracings are not necessarily consistent with the heading	
	n Not applicable	
30	Undefined character position	
31	Record update in process	
	a Record can be used	
	b Record is being updated	
32	Undifferentiated personal name	
	a Differentiated personal name	
	b Undifferentiated personal name	
	n Not applicable	

Appendix A

		<i>National Level Requirement</i>
008/33	Level of establishment	<i>M</i>
	a Fully established heading	<i>A</i>
	b Memorandum	<i>A</i>
	c Provisional	<i>A</i>
	d Preliminary	<i>A</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>A</i>
34-37	Undefined character positions	<i>A</i>
38	Modified record	<i>O</i>
	b Not modified	<i>O</i>
	s Shortened	<i>O</i>
	x Missing characters	<i>O</i>
39	Cataloging source	<i>M</i>
	b Library of Congress	<i>A</i>
	a National Agricultural Library	<i>A</i>
	b National Library of Medicine	<i>A</i>
	c Library of Congress cooperative cataloging program	<i>A</i>
	d Other sources	<i>A</i>
	u Unknown	<i>A</i>
010	LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CONTROL NUMBER (NR)	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a LC Control number (NR)	<i>O</i>
	#z Cancelled/invalid LC control number (R)	<i>M</i>
014	LINK TO BIBLIOGRAPHIC RECORD FOR SERIAL OR MULTIPART ITEM (R)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Control number of related bibliographic record (NR)	<i>M</i>
	#6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
020	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (R)	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a International Standard Book Number (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#c Terms of availability (NR)	<i>O</i>
	#z Cancelled/invalid ISBN (R)	<i>A</i>
	#6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
022	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD SERIAL NUMBER (R)	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a International Standard Serial Number (NR)	<i>A</i>
	#y Incorrect ISSN (R)	<i>A</i>
	#z Cancelled ISSN (R)	<i>A</i>
	#6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>

Appendix A

*National Level
Requirement*

035	SYSTEM CONTROL NUMBER (R)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a System control number (NR)	<i>M</i>
	#z Cancelled/invalid system control number (R)	<i>A</i>
	#6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
040	CATALOGING SOURCE (NR)	<i>M</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Original cataloging agency (NR)	<i>M</i>
	#b Language of cataloging (NR)	<i>O</i>
	#c Transcribing agency (NR)	<i>M</i>
	#d Modifying agency (R)	<i>A</i>
	#f Subject heading/thesaurus conventions (NR)	<i>A</i>
042	AUTHENTICATION CODE (NR)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Code</u>	
	#a Authentication code (R)	<i>M</i>
043	GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE (NR)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Code</u>	
	#a Geographic area code (R)	<i>M</i>
045	TIME PERIOD OF HEADING (NR)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Type of time period in subfield #b or #c	<i>M</i>
	#b Subfield #b or #c not present	<i>A</i>
	0 Single date/time	<i>A</i>
	1 Multiple single dates/times	<i>A</i>
	2 Range of dates/times	<i>A</i>
	Second Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Time period code (R)	<i>A</i>
	#b Formatted 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period (R)	<i>A</i>
	#c Formatted pre-9999 B.C. time period (R)	<i>A</i>
050	LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CALL NUMBER (R)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	<i>M</i>
	First Undefined	<i>M</i>
	Second Source of call number	<i>M</i>
	0 Assigned by LC	<i>A</i>
	4 Assigned by agency other than LC	<i>A</i>

Appendix A

		<i>National Level Requirement</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Classification number (NR)	M
	#b Item number (NR)	A
	#d Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M
	#5 Institution to which field applies (R)	A
	#6 Linkage (NR)	A
052	GEOGRAPHIC CLASSIFICATION CODE (R)	O
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Geographic classification area code (NR)	M
	#b Geographic classification subarea code (R)	A
053	LC CLASSIFICATION NUMBER (R)	O
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Classification number—single number or beginning number of a range (NR)	M
	#b Classification number—end number of a range (NR)	A
	#c Explanatory term (NR)	A
060	NATIONAL LIBRARY OF MEDICINE CALL NUMBER (R)	O
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Undefined	M
	Second Source of call number	M
	0 Assigned by NLM	A
	4 Assigned by agency other than NLM	A
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Classification number (NR)	M
	#b Item number (NR)	A
	#d Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M
	#5 Institution to which field applies (R)	A
	#6 Linkage (NR)	A
066	CHARACTER SETS PRESENT (NR)	A
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Non-ASCII G0 default character set designation (NR)	O
	#b Non-ANSEL G1 default character set designation (NR)	O
	#c Alternate graphic character set identification (R)	M
070	NATIONAL AGRICULTURAL LIBRARY CALL NUMBER (R)	O
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Classification number (NR)	M
	#b Item number (NR)	A
	#d Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M
	#6 Linkage (NR)	A

Appendix A

*National Level
Requirement*

072	SUBJECT CATEGORY CODE (R)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Undefined	<i>M</i>
	Second Code source	<i>M</i>
	0 No information provided	<i>A</i>
	0 National Agricultural Library subject category code list	<i>A</i>
	7 Code source specified in subfield †2	<i>A</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	†a Subject category code (NR)	<i>M</i>
	†x Subject category code subdivision (R)	<i>A</i>
	†2 Code source (NR)	<i>A</i>
	†6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
073	SUBDIVISION USAGE (NR)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	†a Subdivision usage (R)	<i>M</i>
	†z Source (NR)	<i>M</i>
	†6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
082	DEWEY DECIMAL CALL NUMBER (R)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Type of edition	<i>M</i>
	0 Full edition	<i>A</i>
	1 Abridged edition	<i>A</i>
	Second Source of call number	<i>M</i>
	0 Assigned by LC	<i>A</i>
	4 Assigned by agency other than LC	<i>A</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	†a Classification number (NR)	<i>M</i>
	†b Item number (NR)	<i>A</i>
	†d Volumes/dates to which call number applies (NR)	<i>(current) O (earlier) M</i>
	†2 Edition number (NR)	<i>M</i>
	†5 Institution to which field applies (R)	<i>A</i>
	†6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
083	DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION NUMBER (R)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Type of edition	<i>M</i>
	0 Full edition	<i>A</i>
	1 Abridged edition	<i>A</i>
	Second Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	†a Classification number—single number or beginning number of a range (NR)	<i>M</i>
	†b Classification number—end number of a range (NR)	<i>A</i>
	†c Explanatory term (NR)	<i>A</i>
	†2 Edition number (NR)	<i>M</i>
	†6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>

Appendix A

*National Level
Requirement*

09X LOCAL CALL NUMBERS		<i>O</i>
Fields 090-099 are reserved for local series call number definition.		
100 HEADING-PERSONAL NAME (NR)		<i>A</i>
Indicators		
First Type of personal name entry element		<i>M</i>
0 Forename		<i>A</i>
1 Single surname		<i>A</i>
2 Multiple surname		<i>A</i>
3 Family name		<i>A</i>
Second Nonfiling characters		<i>M</i>
0-9 Number of nonfiling characters present		<i>M</i>
Subfield Codes		
#a Personal name (NR)		<i>M</i>
#b Numeration (NR)		<i>A</i>
#c Titles and other words associated with a name (R)		<i>A</i>
#d Dates associated with a name (NR)		<i>A</i>
#e Relator term (R)		<i>O</i>
#f Date of a work (NR)		<i>A</i>
#g Miscellaneous information (NR)		<i>A</i>
#h Medium (NR)		<i>O</i>
#k Form subheading (R)		<i>A</i>
#l Language of a work (NR)		<i>A</i>
#m Medium of performance for music (R)		<i>A</i>
#n Number of part/section of a work (R)		<i>A</i>
#o Arranged statement for music (NR)		<i>A</i>
#p Name of part/section of a work (R)		<i>A</i>
#q Fuller form of name (NR)		<i>A</i>
#r Key for music (NR)		<i>A</i>
#s Version (NR)		<i>A</i>
#t Title of a work (NR)		<i>A</i>
#x General subdivision (R)		<i>A</i>
#y Chronological subdivision (R)		<i>A</i>
#z Geographic subdivision (R)		<i>A</i>
#6 Linkage (NR)		<i>A</i>
110 HEADING-CORPORATE NAME (NR)		<i>A</i>
Indicators		
First Type of corporate name entry element		<i>M</i>
0 Inverted name		<i>A</i>
1 Jurisdiction name		<i>A</i>
2 Name in direct order		<i>A</i>
Second Nonfiling characters		<i>M</i>
0-9 Number of nonfiling characters present		<i>M</i>
Subfield Codes		
#a Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)		<i>M</i>
#b Subordinate unit (R)		<i>A</i>
#c Location of meeting (NR)		<i>A</i>
#d Date of meeting or treaty signing (R)		<i>A</i>
#e Relator term (R)		<i>O</i>

Appendix A

*National Level
Requirement*

#f	Date of a work (NR)	A
#g	Miscellaneous information (NR)	A
#h	Medium (NR)	O
#k	Form subheading (R)	A
#l	Language of a work (NR)	A
#m	Medium of performance for music (R)	A
#n	Number of part/section/meeting (R)	A
#o	Arranged statement for music (NR)	A
#p	Name of part/section of a work (R)	A
#r	Key for music (NR)	A
#s	Version (NR)	A
#t	Title of a work (NR)	A
#x	General subdivision (R)	A
#y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
#z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A
111	IHEADING-MEETING NAME (NR)	A
<u>Indicators</u>		
First	Type of meeting name entry element	M
0	Inverted name	A
1	Jurisdiction name	A
2	Name in direct order	A
Second	Nonfiling characters	M
0-9	Number of nonfiling characters present	M
<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
#a	Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)	M
#c	Location of meeting (NR)	A
#d	Date of meeting (NR)	A
#e	Subordinate unit (R)	A
#f	Date of a work (NR)	A
#g	Miscellaneous information (NR)	A
#h	Medium (NR)	O
#k	Form subheading (R)	A
#l	Language of a work (NR)	A
#n	Number of part/section/meeting (R)	A
#p	Name of part/section of a work (R)	A
#q	Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)	A
#s	Version (NR)	A
#t	Title of a work (NR)	A
#x	General subdivision (R)	A
#y	Chronological subdivision (R)	A
#z	Geographic subdivision (R)	A
#6	Linkage (NR)	A

Appendix A

*National Level
Requirement*

130	IHEADING—UNIFORM TITLE (NR)	A
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Undefined	M
	Second Nonfiling characters	M
	0-9 Number of nonfiling characters present	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Uniform title (NR)	M
	#d Date of treaty signing (R)	A
	#f Date of a work (NR)	A
	#g Miscellaneous information (NR)	A
	#h Medium (NR)	O
	#k Form subheading (R)	A
	#l Language of a work (NR)	A
	#m Medium of performance for music (R)	A
	#n Number of part/section of a work (R)	A
	#o Arranged statement for music (NR)	A
	#p Name of part/section of a work (R)	A
	#r Key for music (NR)	A
	#s Version (NR)	A
	#t Title of a work (NR)	A
	#x General subdivision (R)	A
	#y Chronological subdivision (R)	A
	#z Geographic subdivision (R)	A
	#6 Linkage (NR)	A
150	IHEADING—TOPICAL TERM (NR)	A
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Undefined	M
	Second Nonfiling characters	M
	0-9 Number of nonfiling characters present	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Topical term or geographic name as entry element (NR)	M
	#b Topical term following geographic name as entry element (NR)	A
	#x General subdivision (R)	A
	#y Chronological subdivision (R)	A
	#z Geographic subdivision (R)	A
	#6 Linkage (NR)	A
151	IHEADING—GEOGRAPHIC NAME (NR)	A
	<u>Indicators</u>	
	First Undefined	M
	Second Nonfiling characters	M
	0-9 Number of nonfiling characters present	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	#a Geographic name (NR)	M
	#x General subdivision (R)	A
	#y Chronological subdivision (R)	A
	#z Geographic subdivision (R)	A
	#6 Linkage (NR)	A

Appendix A

*National Level
Requirement*

260	COMPLEX SEE REFERENCE-SUBJECT (R)	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Heading referred to (R)	<i>M</i>
	‡i Explanatory text (R)	<i>M</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
360	COMPLEX SEE ALSO REFERENCE-SUBJECT (R)	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Heading referred to (R)	<i>M</i>
	‡i Explanatory text (R)	<i>M</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
TRACING FIELDS		
	‡i Text of reference instruction phrase (NR)	<i>A</i>
	‡w Control subfield (NR)	<i>A</i>
	/0 Special relationship	<i>O</i>
	a Earlier heading	<i>O</i>
	b Later heading	<i>O</i>
	d Acronym	<i>O</i>
	f Musical composition	<i>O</i>
	g Broader term	<i>O</i>
	h Narrower term	<i>O</i>
	i Reference instruction phrase in subfield ‡i	<i>O</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>O</i>
	/1 Tracing use restriction	<i>O</i>
	a Name reference structure only	<i>O</i>
	b Subject reference structure only	<i>O</i>
	c Series reference structure only	<i>O</i>
	d Name and subject reference structures	<i>O</i>
	e Name and series reference structures	<i>O</i>
	f Subject and series reference structures	<i>O</i>
	g Name, subject, and series reference structures	<i>O</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>O</i>
	/2 Earlier form of heading	<i>O</i>
	a Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)	<i>O</i>
	e Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)	<i>O</i>
	o Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)	<i>O</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>O</i>
	/3 Reference display	<i>O</i>
	a Reference not displayed	<i>O</i>
	b Reference not displayed, field 664 used	<i>O</i>
	c Reference not displayed, field 663 used	<i>O</i>
	d Reference not displayed, field 665 used	<i>O</i>
	n Not applicable	<i>O</i>
	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)	<i>A</i>

Appendix A

		<i>National Level Requirement</i>
400	SEE FROM TRACING—PERSONAL NAME (R) <i>[see 100 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
410	SEE FROM TRACING—CORPORATE NAME (R) <i>[see 110 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
411	SEE FROM TRACING—MEETING NAME (R) <i>[see 111 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
430	SEE FROM TRACING—UNIFORM TITLE (R) <i>[see 130 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
450	SEE FROM TRACING—TOPICAL TERM (R) <i>[see 150 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
451	SEE FROM TRACING—GEOGRAPHIC NAME (R) <i>[see 151 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
500	SEE ALSO FROM TRACING—PERSONAL NAME (R) <i>[see 100 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
510	SEE ALSO FROM TRACING—CORPORATE NAME (R) <i>[see 110 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
511	SEE ALSO FROM TRACING—MEETING NAME (R) <i>[see 111 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
530	SEE ALSO FROM TRACING—UNIFORM TITLE (R) <i>[see 130 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
550	SEE ALSO FROM TRACING—TOPICAL TERM (R) <i>[see 150 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
551	SEE ALSO FROM TRACING—GEOGRAPHIC NAME (R) <i>[see 151 and Tracing Fields]</i>	<i>A</i>
640	SERIES DATES OF PUBLICATION AND/OR VOLUME DESIGNATION (R)	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u>	
First	Note format style	<i>M</i>
0	Formatted style	<i>A</i>
1	Unformatted style	<i>A</i>
Second	Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
#a	Dates of publication and/or volume designation (NR)	<i>M</i>
#z	Source of information (NR)	<i>A</i>
#6	Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>

Appendix A

*National Level
Requirement*

641	SERIES NUMBERING PECULIARITIES (R)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Numbering peculiarities note (NR)	<i>M</i>
	‡z Source of information (NR)	<i>A</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
642	SERIES NUMBERING EXAMPLE (R)	<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Series numbering example (NR)	<i>M</i>
	‡d Volumes/dates to which series numbering example applies (NR)	<i>(current) O</i> <i>(earlier) M</i>
	‡5 Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	<i>M</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
643	SERIES PLACE AND PUBLISHER/ISSUING BODY (R)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Place (R)	<i>M</i>
	‡b Publisher/issuing body (R)	<i>M</i>
	‡d Volumes/dates to which place and publisher/issuing body apply (NR)	<i>(current) O</i> <i>(earlier) M</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
644	SERIES ANALYSIS PRACTICE (R)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Series analysis practice (NR)	<i>M</i>
	f Analyzed in full	
	p Analyzed in part	
	n Not analyzed	
	‡b Exceptions to analysis practice (NR)	<i>A</i>
	‡d Volumes/dates to which analysis practice applies (NR)	<i>(current) O</i> <i>(earlier) M</i>
	‡5 Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	<i>M</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>
645	SERIES TRACING PRACTICE (R)	<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Series tracing practice (NR)	<i>M</i>
	t Traced as a series added entry	
	n Not traced as a series added entry	
	‡d Volumes/dates to which tracing practice applies (NR)	<i>(current) O</i> <i>(earlier) M</i>
	‡5 Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	<i>M</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	<i>A</i>

Appendix A

National Level
Requirement

646	SERIES CLASSIFICATION PRACTICE (R)	O
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Series classification practice (NR)	M
	c Volumes are classified as a collection	
	m Volumes are classified with main or other series	
	s Volumes are classified separately	
	‡d Volumes/dates to which classification practice applies (NR)	(current) O (earlier) M
	‡5 Institution/copy to which field applies (R)	M
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
663	COMPLEX SEE ALSO REFERENCE-NAME (NR)	O
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Explanatory text (R)	M
	‡b Heading referred to (R)	M
	‡t Title referred to (R)	A
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
664	COMPLEX SEE REFERENCE-NAME (R)	O
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Explanatory text (R)	M
	‡b Heading referred to (R)	M
	‡t Title referred to (R)	A
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
665	IIISTORY REFERENCE (NR)	O
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a History reference (R)	M
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
666	GENERAL EXPLANATORY REFERENCE-NAME (NR)	O
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a General explanatory reference (R)	M
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
667	NONPUBLIC GENERAL NOTE (R)	O
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Nonpublic general note (NR)	M
	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)	A
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A
670	SOURCE DATA FOUND (R)	A
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined	M
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>	
	‡a Source citation (NR)	M
	‡b Information found (NR)	A
	‡6 Linkage (NR)	A

Appendix A

*National Level
Requirement*

			<i>O</i>
675	SOURCE DATA NOT FOUND (NR)		<i>M</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined		
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
	‡a Source citation (R)		<i>M</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)		<i>A</i>
678	EPICTOME (NR)		<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined		<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
	‡a Epitome (R)		<i>M</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)		<i>A</i>
680	PUBLIC GENERAL NOTE (R)		<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined		<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
	‡a Heading or subdivision term (R)		<i>A</i>
	‡i Explanatory text (R)		<i>M</i>
	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)		<i>A</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)		<i>A</i>
681	SUBJECT EXAMPLE TRACING NOTE (R)		<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined		<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
	‡a Subject heading or subdivision term (R)		<i>M</i>
	‡i Explanatory text (R)		<i>M</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)		<i>A</i>
682	DELETED HEADING INFORMATION (NR)		<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined		<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
	‡a Replacement heading (R)		<i>A</i>
	‡i Explanatory text (R)		<i>M</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)		<i>A</i>
688	APPLICATION HISTORY NOTE (R)		<i>O</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Undefined		<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
	‡a Application history note (NR)		<i>M</i>
	‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)		<i>A</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)		<i>A</i>
880	ALTERNATE GRAPHIC REPRESENTATION (R)		<i>A</i>
	<u>Indicators</u> Same as associated field		<i>M</i>
	<u>Subfield Codes</u>		
	‡a-z Same as associated field		<i>M</i>
	‡0-5,7-9 Same as associated field		<i>M</i>
	‡6 Linkage (NR)		<i>M</i>

Obsolete and Previously Used Content Designators

This appendix contains two lists. The first contains content designators that were once defined but are not currently defined in *USMARC Format for Authority Data*. These content designators should not occur in any USMARC records. The second list contains content designators that were previously used in older authority records but are not used in current records. These content designators are defined in *USMARC Format for Authority Data*, but the description contains a restricted use statement.

OBSOLETE CONTENT DESIGNATORS**■ LEADER****/07 Bibliographic level**

Defined codes were: t, Name/title heading; u, Uniform title heading; x, Name heading; y, Subject heading. This character position is currently undefined.

■ VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS**002 Subrecord Linkage Field**

This field tag is currently undefined.

008 Fixed-Length Data Elements**008/11-13 Site number for fields**

These character positions are currently defined as: /11, Subject heading system/thesaurus; /12, Type of series; /13, Numbered/unnumbered series.

008/14 Author aspect of heading

Character position is currently named *Heading use—main or added entry*. Codes þ (Undetermined), u (Unknown), and c (Heading is appropriate for use as a main or added entry) are obsolete. The meaning of code c is incorporated into the current definition of code a.

008/15 Subject aspect of heading

Character position is currently named *Heading use—subject added entry*. Codes þ (Undetermined), u (Unknown), and c (Heading is appropriate for use as a subject) are obsolete. The meaning of code c is incorporated into the current definition of code a.

Appendix B

- 008/16 Series aspect of heading
Character position is currently named *Heading use-series added entry*. Codes \emptyset (Undetermined), u (Unknown), and c (Heading is appropriate for use as a series) are obsolete. The meaning of code c is incorporated into the current definition of code a.
- 008/34 Heading used in LC
Defined codes were: a, In LC; b, Not in LC. This character position is currently undefined.
- 008/35-37 Language of heading code
These character positions were undefined in 1986. Records created prior to 1986 may contain a hyphen (-) or a fill character (|) in each of these three character positions.

■ VARIABLE DATA FIELDS

010-681 All variable data fields

$\neq w$ - Control subfield

The 24-character (00-23), fixed-length subfield $\neq w$ occurring in all of the variable data fields (010-681) is currently defined as a 1- to 4-character (0-3), variable-length subfield optionally used only in 4XX and 5XX tracing fields.

	<u>Obsolete</u>	<u>Current</u>
/00	Status	Special relationship in 4XX and 5XX fields
/01	Site number	Tracing use restriction in 4XX and 5XX fields
/02	Site number (cont'd.)	Earlier form of heading in 4XX and 5XX fields
/03	Site number (cont'd.)	Reference display in 4XX and 5XX fields
/04-09	Date of last transaction	
/10	Distribution	
/11	Cataloging source code	
/12	Rules (Names)	008/10 Cataloging rules and $\neq w/2$, Earlier form of heading
/13	Inclusion for printing (Names)	
/14	Tracing information indicator	$\neq w/0$ Special relationship
/15	Reference generation indicator	$\neq w/3$ Reference display
/16	Romanization scheme	008/07 Romanization scheme
/17-19	Language tables	
/20	Rules (Subjects)	008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus
/21	Inclusion for printing (Subjects)	
/22	Relator terms	
/23	Tracing use indicator	$\neq w/1$ Tracing use restriction

- 013 Link to Bibliographic Records
This field tag is currently undefined.
- 110 Heading—Corporate Name
410 See From Tracing—Corporate Name
510 See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name
 ‡u - Nonprinting subject
- 111 Heading—Meeting Name
411 See From Tracing—Meeting Name
511 See Also From Tracing—Meeting Name
 ‡b - Number of conference
 Subfield ‡n (Number of part/section/meeting) is used in both current and retro-spectively converted records.
- 151 Heading—Geographic Name
451 See From Tracing—Geographic Name
551 See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name
 ‡b - Name following place as entry element
- 668 Characters in Nonroman Alphabets
This field tag is currently undefined.
- 676 Note—Cataloging Rules (Names)
This field tag is currently undefined.
- 699 Note—Temporary Scope Note (Subjects)
This field tag is currently undefined.
- 880 Sorting Field
This field tag is currently undefined.
-

PREVIOUSLY USED IN OLDER RECORDS**■ VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS****008 Fixed-Length Data Elements**

008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules
 a - Earlier rules
 b - AACR I

008/17 Type of subject subdivision
 þ - Undefined

008/29 Reference evaluation
 þ - Undefined

Appendix B

008/38 Modified record
s - Shortened
x - Missing characters

■ VARIABLE DATA FIELDS

050 Library of Congress Call Number
| Indicator 2 - Undefined (ø)

090 Local Call Number
All of the 09X (090-099) fields are reserved for local series call number definition.

130 Heading—Uniform Title
430 See From Tracing—Uniform Title
530 See Also From Tracing—Uniform Title
‡g - Miscellaneous information

4XX and 5XX Tracing Fields
‡w/0 Special relationship
f - Musical composition

Summary of Data Coding Interdependencies

The following analyses summarize data coding interdependencies that must be considered in each kind of record identified in 008/09 and in established heading records for specific types of headings. All of the data elements that may (or may not be) used in an authority record are not listed here. Only those elements that are dependent upon other codes or data elements are cited. Annotated full record examples are provided in Appendix D.

Established heading record (general requirements)

- 008/09 = a or f
- Record must contain a Leader, Directory, and the following variable fields: 001, 005, 008, 040, 1XX
- The following fields may not be in the record: 260, 664, 666
- 008/06 is code n or fill character (|) if 008/15 = b
- If 008/10 = n, 008/11 must not be code n
- If 008/11 = n, 008/10 must not be code n
- 008/13 is code n if 008/12 = n or 008/16 = b
- 008/14 is code a if 008/10 is not code n (+x, +y, +z must not be present in 1XX)
- 008/15 is code a if 008/11 is not code n (+x, +y, +z may be present in 1XX)
- 008/16 is code a if 008/12 is not code n (+x, +y, +z must not be present in 1XX)
- 008/17 is any defined code (if 008/09 = f) or a fill character (|)
- 008/29 is code a or b if 4XX/5XX fields are present
- 008/32 is code n if 1XX is not a 100 field having Indicator 1 = 0, 1, or 2
- 008/33 must not be code n

Established name, name/title, and uniform title headings (other than series headings)

- 008/09 = a
- The following series-specific variable fields may not be in the record: 014, 020, 022, 050, 060, 070, 082, 09X, 64X series treatment fields
- 008/10 must not be code n
- 008/11 may be code other than n
- 008/12-13 must be n if 008/16 = b
- 008/14 must be code a
- 008/15 must be code a if 008/11 is not n
- 008/16 must be code b
- 008/28 must be a defined code or a fill character (|)

See also general requirements for established heading record

Appendix C

Established series heading

- 008/09 = a
- The record may contain any of the following series-specific variable fields: 014, 020, 022, 050, 060, 070, 082, 09X
- The record may contain 64X series treatment fields with the following restrictions:
 - 641 and 642 must not be present if 008/13 = b or n
 - 642 requires field 645≠a be code t
 - 644, 645, and 646 must not be present if 008/12 = c
- 008/10, 12, and 33 must not be code n
- 008/14 and 16 must be code a
- 008/15 must be code a if 008/11 is not code n
- 008/28 may be code ¶ or a fill character (|)
- 008/32 must be code n

See also general requirements for established heading record

Established topical term and geographic headings

- 008/09 = a
- The following fields may not be in the record: 663, 667
- 008/07 and 17 may be code n or a fill character (|)
- 008/10, 12-13, and 32 must be code n
- 008/11 must not be code n
- 008/14 must be code b
- 008/15 must be code a
- 008/16 must be code b
- 008/28 may be code ¶ or a fill character (|)

See also general requirements for established heading record

Reference record

- 008/09 = b, c, or g
- Record must contain a Leader, a Directory, and the following variable fields: 001, 005, 008, 040, 1XX
- One of the following reference note fields must be in the record: 260, 664, 666
- The following fields may not be in the record: 4XX, 5XX
- 008/06 must be code n or a fill character (|)
- 008/10 may not be code n if 008/09 = b or c and 664 or 666 is present
- 008/11 may not be code n if 008/09 = b or g and 260 is present
- 008/14-16 must be code b
- 008/12, 13, 29, and 33 must be code n
- 008/28 must be code ¶ or a fill character (|)

Subdivision record

- 008/09 = d
- Record must contain a Leader, a Directory, and the following variable fields: 005, 008, 040, and 1XX
- 008/06 and 07 must be code n or a fill character (|)
- 008/10, 12, 13, 28, 29, 32, 33 must be code n
- 008/11 must not be code n
- 008/14-16 must be code b
- 008/17 must not be code n but may be a fill character (|)

Node label record

- 008/09 = e
- Record must contain a Leader, a Directory, and the following variable fields 005, 008, 040, and 1XX
- The record contains no tracings and references (260, 4XX, 5XX) or note (667, 68X) fields
- 008/06 and 07 must be code n or a fill character (|)
- 008/10, 12, 13, 17, 29, 32, and 33 must be code n
- 008/11 must not be code n
- 008/14-16 must be code b
- 008/17 must be code n

Appendix D

Full Record Examples

The examples in this appendix reflect the application of USMARC content designators in a full record context. Although the data may be taken from actual authority records, these records are included for illustrative purposes only and are not usable for authority purposes.

Note that the creator of the authority data is unknown (008/39, code u; 040, no subfield #a) and that ex as the control number prefix in field 001 indicates that the record is an example only. The system-generated portions of the Leader (LDR) are represented by asterisks (*). The records also lack a system-generated Directory. The 008 has been segmented to improve readability. The segmentation is as follows: character positions 0-5, 6-10, 11-15, 16-20, 21-25, 26-30, 31-35, 36-39.

ESTABLISHED IIEADING RECORD-PERSONAL NAME

This example typifies the most common authority record, an established heading for a personal name. Several 670 fields (Source Data Found) are present in this record. 008/10 is coded c to indicate conformity to AACR 2 rules; 008/29 is coded n because no 4XX or 5XX tracing fields are present.

LDR	*****nz 22*****n 4500								
001	cx 86114834								
005	19870121083133.6								
008	<table border="1"><tr><td>870121</td><td>vn/ac</td><td>nnnaa</td><td>vn/v/v</td><td>v/v/v/v</td><td>v/v/n/v</td><td>aaa/v/v</td><td>v/v/u</td></tr></table>	870121	vn/ac	nnnaa	vn/v/v	v/v/v/v	v/v/n/v	aaa/v/v	v/v/u
870121	vn/ac	nnnaa	vn/v/v	v/v/v/v	v/v/n/v	aaa/v/v	v/v/u		
040	#cDLC								
100	10#aCameron, Simon, #d1799-1889								
670	#aNMC data from NJ Hist. Soc. for Bradley, J.P. Papers, 1836-1937#b(Simon Cameron)								
670	#aLC data base, 1-21-87#b(hdg.: Cameron, Simon, 1799-1889)								
670	#aDAB#b(Cameron, Simon, 1799-1889; Sen. from Pa. (Republican boss); financier; Sec. War under Lincoln; Min. to Russia; s. Charles & Martha (Pfoutz) C.; newspaper editor; owner Harrisburg Republican; commis. to settle claims of Winnebago Indians; m. Margaret Brua; father of: J.D. Cameron (1833-1918))								

Appendix D

ESTABLISHED HEADING RECORD-CORPORATE NAME

This example is an established heading record for a corporate name. A full complement of 4XX and 5XX tracing fields and 670 Source Data Found fields are present. 008/06 is coded i to indicate that the heading can be divided geographically by the indirect method. This is common with many corporate name heading records. 008/29 is coded a to indicate that the cross reference tracings have been evaluated for consistency with the cataloging rules upon which the 1XX is based. Note that some of the indicator values in the tracing fields are different from the indicator values used in the heading to reflect different entry element types.

LDR ****nzþþþ22****nþþ4500

001 exþ82221219þ

005 19860107072428.3

008

860107	inþac	nnnaa	þnþþþ	þþþþþ	þþsaþ	anaþþ	þþþu
--------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	------

040 þþ‡cDLC

110 20‡aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency

410 10‡aOklahoma.‡bCouncil on Juvenile Delinquency

410 10‡aOklahoma.‡bOklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency

510 20‡wa‡aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency Planning

510 20‡wb‡aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Justice

670 þþ‡aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency Planning. Youth in trouble, 1971-1982;‡bv. 2, t.p. (Oklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency) p. 3 (organized as Oklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency Planning in 1969)

670 þþ‡aOklahoma Council on Juvenile Justice. Report, 1983;‡bp. 5 (Oklahoma Council on Juvenile Justice ... previously the Oklahoma Council on Juvenile Delinquency)

Appendix D

ESTABLISHED HEADING RECORD—MEETING NAME

This example of an established heading for a meeting name shows occasions when a subfield code is input before a mark of punctuation. Generally content designators follow punctuation, such as commas, periods, colons, etc. In both the 111 and the second and third 670 fields, the content designators precede the opening parenthesis.

The 4XX field includes a control subfield **#w** that produces a special display and indicates any reference structure restrictions. In this case, the subfield **#w** codes identify the form of name in the 4XX as the form of heading established under earlier cataloging rules and suppress the display of a cross reference.

LDR *****nzþþ22****nþþ4500

001 exbþ82243908þ

005 19840607000000.0

008 840607 inþac nnnaa bnþþþ þþþþþ þþualþ analþþ þþþu

040 þþþcDLC

111 20þaCanadian Arctic Expeditionþd(1913-1918)

411 20þwnnaaþaCanadian Arctic Expedition,þd1913-1918

670 þþþaRoberts, H. Eskimo songs, 1925:þbt.p. (Canadian Arctic Expedition, 1913-1918)

670 þþþaLC data base, 2/18/84þb(hdg.: Canadian Arctic Expedition, 1913-1918)

670 þþþaNLC, 3/1/84þb(AACR 2: Canadian Arctic Expedition (1913-1918))

Appendix D

ESTABLISHED HEADING RECORD—GEOGRAPHIC NAME

This example of an established heading for a geographic name includes **þ** as the first indicator value in all of the variable data fields. 008/06 is coded **þ** because this heading cannot be subdivided geographically. Authoritative reference sources are usually cited in 670 fields to justify the form of the name in field 151 and any 4XX/5XX tracing fields in geographic name heading records.

LDR ****nzþþþ22****nþþ4500

001 exþ84112192þ

005 19860610134533.5

008 | 860529 | þnþac | nnnaa | bnþþþ | þþþþþ | þþþþþ | anaþþ | þþþþu |

040 þþþcDLC

151 þ0þaBurkina Faso

451 þ0þaBurkina

451 þ0þaBourkina

451 þ0þaBourkina Fasso

551 þ0þwaþaUpper Volta

670 þþþaU.S. Dept. of State. Geographic note GE-198, 8/26/84þb(as of 8/4/84 by presidential decree of Thomas Sankara, Republic of Upper Volta will henceforth be known as Burkina Faso; short form: Burkina; long form: Burkina Faso; inhabitants are called Burkinabe)

670 þþþaABGN, 9/24/84þb(Burkina [brief] Faso, name in effect 8/4/84 along with new flag, anthem; former name: Upper Volta)

670 þþþaWashington Post, 8/3/84þb(Upper Volta will change its name to Bourkina Fasso which means "country of incorruptible men")

Appendix D

ESTABLISHED HEADING RECORD—UNIFORM TITLE (SERIES)

This is an example of an established heading for a uniform title. It can be identified as a series title heading by code a 008/12 and by the presence of 64X series treatment fields. The 646, 644, 645, and 642 fields contain a subfield #5 that identifies the institution/copy to which the field applies. Note that subfield #5 is not defined for other fields in the authorities format. Note also that ISBD punctuation is not included in the 643 field; it may be system generated as display constants.

In this record 008/06 contains a fill (|) character, showing that no attempt has been made to code that aspect of this heading. This example also illustrates the absence of subfield #b containing the citation of the form found in the source in the 670 field.

LDR ****nzb||22****n||4500

001 ex||42032579||

005 19840322000000.0

008 | 840322 | n||ac | naaaa | an|||| | |||| | |||| | anal|| | |||| |

040 ||||cDLC

130 #0# a Bulletin (Ahmadu Bello University. Dept. of Geology)

410 20#a Ahmadu Bello University.#b Dept. of Geology.#t Bulletin

646 ||||fas#5DLC

644 ||||faf#5DLC

645 ||||fat#5DLC

642 ||||av. 2#5DLC

643 ||||a Zaria, Nigeria#b Dept. of Geology of Ahmadu Bello University

670 ||||a Kogbe, C.A. Geology of the south eastern (Sokoto) sector of the Illemeden Basin, 1979:#b ser. t.p.

Appendix D

ESTABLISHED HEADING RECORD—TOPICAL SUBJECT

Established heading records for topical subjects typically include several 4XX and 5XX fields. The tracing fields are justified by numerous 670 fields. Sources in which no information was found are recorded in a single 675 field, each identified by subfield *#a*. The 675 field is not repeatable.

In this record, 008/06 is coded *i* to indicate that the heading can be geographically subdivided by the indirect method. The descriptive cataloging rules code in 008/10 is *n*, because this character position is not applicable to the formulation of topical subject headings.

LDR *****nz\$22*****n\$4500
001 ex\$86004405\$
005 19860808072450.5
008 860719 | in\$an | annba | bn\$0\$ | \$0\$0\$ | \$0\$al\$ | anal\$ | \$0\$0\$u |
040 \$#cDLC
150 \$0#aOptical disks
450 \$0#aDiscs, Optical
450 \$0#aDisks, Optical
450 \$0#aOptical discs
550 \$0#wg#aOptical storage devices
670 \$0#aWork cat.: McQueen, J. Videodisc and optical digital disk technologies and their applications in libraries, 1986.
670 \$#aWeb. 3#b(disk or disc)
670 \$#aLibrary Literature#b(Optical discs)
670 \$#aMcGraw-Hill dict. sci. tech.#b(optical disk - a type of video disk storage device consisting of a pressed disk with a spiral groove at the bottom of which are submicrometer-sized depressions that are sensed by a laser beam.)
675 \$#aNCC thes. comput. terms;#aNASA;#aIAD;#aNCC thes. comput. terms;#aBDNE2

ESTABLISHED HEADING AND SUBDIVISION RECORD

This record is coded f in 008/09 because the 151 heading may be used both as a main term and as a subject subdivision. Special information about the use of this heading may be included in general note fields 667 and/or 680. In this example no 670 is included to justify the 151 heading or 451 tracing fields, although one may be added if needed in the future.

LDR *5**nzþþþ22***nþþ4500

001 exþ88123456þ

005 19860423055828.0

008

860423	þnþfn	znnba	bdþþþ	þþþþþ	þþþþþ	þþþþþ	anþþþ	þþþþu
--------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

040 þþþcDLC

151 þþþaGreat Lakes

451 þþþaRegions of the United States

680 þþþaThis term is to be used only as a geographic descriptor and may not be subdivided. It may, however, be used to subdivide topical indexing terms.

Appendix D

REFERENCE RECORD (UNTRACED NAME REFERENCE)

The 1XX heading in an untraced name reference record (like this one from a meeting name) is not traced in a 4XX field in any established heading record. The name in this example did not qualify as a legitimate cross reference to the heading for the conference. Similar records are often needed from a particle of personal names (e.g., De la ...) or initial parts of corporate names (e.g., Royal ...) that would otherwise never qualify as cross references alone.

The coding of the 008 field must be done with care. Many common codes change for reference records, particularly character positions 14, 15, 16, and 29. General Explanatory Reference records for names may not contain 4XX, 5XX, or 67X fields. Explanatory notes are given in the 666 field.

LDR *5**nz\$22***n\$4500

001 ex\$79373119\$

005 19790519201750.0

008

790519	nn\$bc	nnnbb	bn\$yy	yy\$yy	yy\$ny	ann\$y	yy\$u
--------	--------	-------	--------	--------	--------	--------	-------

040 \$b\$cDLC

111 20\$aPuebla

666 \$b\$aName used to refer to the 3rd Conferencia General del Episcopado Latinoamericano, held in Puebla, Mexico in 1979. Since this particular conference has come to be so well known books often refer to it simply as "Puebla", "Puebla '79", or "Puebla conference".

Appendix D

REFERENCE RECORD (TRACED SUBJECT REFERENCE)

The 1XX heading in an traced subject reference record is traced in a 4XX field in a related established heading record. The reference instruction phrase is given in subfield *#i* of the 260 field. 008/06, 10, 29, 32, and 33 must be coded n (not applicable) for this type heading. 008/14, 15, and 16 are coded b (not appropriate for use as a main or added entry in a bibliographic record).

Reference record:

LDR *****nzþþþ22*****nþþ4500
001 exþ99123457þ
005 19860327111910.5
008 860211 | nnþcn | znnbb | baþþþ | þþþþþ | þþþnþ | annþþ | þþþu |
040 þþþcDLC
150 þþþaAntiquities, Roman
260 þþþisubdivisionþaAntiquities, Romanþiunder names of countries, cities, etc.

Established heading record:

LDR *****nzþþþ22*****nþþ4500
001 exþ99789465þ
005 19860327145341.5
008 860327 | þnþan | znnba | bnþþþ | þþþþþ | þþþaþ | anaþþ | þþþu |
040 þþþcDLC
151 þþþaRomeþxAntiquities
360 þþþisubdivisionþaAntiquities, Romanþiunder names of countries, cities, etc.
450 þþþaAntiquities, Roman
450 þþþaRoman antiquities

Appendix D

REFERENCE RECORD (TRACED REFERENCE)

The traced name reference record differs from the untraced name reference record (App. D, p. 8) in that the 1XX heading may be traced as a 4XX in an established heading record. The codes in the 008 field are similar to those in the untraced reference record, especially character positions 14, 15, 16, and 29. Explanatory notes are given in a 664 field, which is defined for this kind of record only. Reference records may not contain 4XX, 5XX, or 67X fields.

LDR ****nzþþþ22****nþþ4500

001 exþ82000012þ

005 19840420171725.0

008 820106 | nnþcc | nnnbb | bþþþþþ | þþþþþþ | þþþnþ | aanþþþ | þþþu_

040 þþþcDLCþdDLC

100 10þaReger, Max,þd1873-1916.þtDies irae

664 þþþaFor this movement included in the composer's unfinished Requiem search under
þbReger, Max, 1873-1916.þtRequiem (Mass)

Appendix D

REFERENCE AND SUBDIVISION RECORD

This is an example of a reference and subdivision record. The heading in the 1XX is not used as a 4XX in any established heading record. The 1XX heading is an unestablished heading, but it may be used as a subject subdivision. The 260 Complex See Reference field gives specific instructions on the use of the subdivision.

LDR *****nzbbv22*****nbb4500

001 ex990377006

005 19860328161425.8

| 008 860328 nn̪gn znnbb baŋp̪p̪p̪ p̪p̪p̪p̪p̪ p̪p̪nŋ annp̪p̪ p̪p̪u

040 Bb‡cDLC

150 **þó ða Disciples**

260 bbf+isubdivision+adisciples+iunder specific names of individual persons

Appendix D

SUBDIVISION RECORD

The 1XX heading in this type record is unestablished but may be used as a subject subdivision with established headings. 4XX and 5XX fields are not used with this kind of record. Information about the subdivision term and/or other established subject headings with which it is used may be contained in general note fields 667 and/or 680. Subdivision records may contain 670 and 675 fields to justify the heading and usage.

LDR ****nz|||22****n|||4500

001 ex\87000001\

005 19870520103200.0

008

870520	nn dn	cnnbb	ba b b	b b b b	b b b n b	ann b b	b b bu
--------	-------	-------	--------	---------	-----------	---------	--------

040 b|b‡cDLC

073 b|b‡aB1‡aB3‡aB4‡aB5‡aB6‡aD12.776.124
‡aD13.444.308‡aD13.444735‡aF1‡aF2‡aG4‡aG5
‡aG6‡aG7‡aG8‡aG9‡aG10‡aG11‡aG12‡zMeSH

150 b|0‡adrug effects

680 b|b‡aUsed with organs, regions, tissues, or organisms and physiological and physiological processes for the effects of drugs and chemicals.

Appendix D

NODE LABEL RECORD

The 1XX field in a node label or facet indicator record contains an unestablished term (usually a fairly broad one) that may be used in the systematic section of a thesaurus to indicate the logical basis on which a category has been divided. The term in the 1XX is not used as an indexing term or subject heading. This example has code r in 008/11 indicating it came from the Art and Architecture Thesaurus. Reference (4XX and 5XX) and note (67X, 68X, etc.) fields are not used in a node label record.

LDR *****nz|||||22*****n|||4500

001 ex\|87051955\|

005 19870323201700.0

008

870323	nn\ en	rnnbb	bn\ p\	\ p\ p\ p\	\ p\ p\ n\	ann\ p\	\ p\ p\ u
--------	--------	-------	--------	------------	------------	---------	-----------

040 \|p\|cDLC

150 \|p\|acatalogs by source

Appendix D

RECORD CONTAINING ALTERNATE GRAPHIC REPRESENTATIONS

This example illustrates the linking of fields containing nonroman data to a core field that contains roman data. The two 880 fields and the 100 field for which they provide alternate graphic representations are linked by the tag and occurrence numbers contained in subfield \$6. The first alternate character set in each field 880 is identified by a modified standard escape sequence in subfield \$6; the full escape sequence occurs before the actual nonroman-character string. For display purposes, subfield \$6 also contains a field orientation code in the Hebrew 880 field. The default escape sequence for the record immediately follows the nonroman-character string. The alternate graphic character sets in the 880 fields are also identified in field 066.

LDR ****nzþþþ22****nþþ4500

001 exþ90111047þ

005 19901108114711.0

008

901108	þcþac	nnaaa	bñþþþ	þþþþþ	þþþþþ	aþþþþ	þþþþu
--------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

040 þþ\$cDLC

066 þþ\$c(2\$c(4\$c(N

100 00\$6880-02\$aMoses (Biblical leader)

400 00\$aMūsā (Biblical leader)

400 00\$aMoshch (Biblical leader)

400 00\$aMoiseī (Biblical leader)

880 00\$6100-02/(2/r\$aE(2מושָׁנְאֵ(B (Biblical leader)

880 00\$6100-02/(N\$aE(NՄուսեյԵ(B (Biblical leader)

Note: In the escape sequences,
E = ESCAPE character
(= set is to be designated as the GO set and has one byte per character
2 = Basic Hebrew character set
N = Basic Cyrillic character set
B = ASCII default character set

Alphabetical List of Ambiguous Headings

This listing is an alphabetical compilation of the separate lists of ambiguous headings provided under *Input Conventions* in the X00 Personal Names, X10 Corporate Names, X11 Meeting Names, X30 Uniform Titles, X50 Topical Terms, and X51 Geographic Names *General Information* sections.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>Abbeys [X10]
 Academics [X10]
 Agoras [X51]
 Airplanes, Named [X10]
 Airports [X51]
 Almshouses [X10]
 Amusement parks [X51]
 Apartment houses [X10]
 Arboretums [X51]
 Archaeological sites [X51]
 Areas and regions [X51]
 Armories [X10]
 Artificial satellites [X10]
 Artists' groups [X50]
 Asylums (Charitable institutions) [X10]
 Athletic contests [X50]
 Auditoriums [X10]</p> <p>Banks [X10]
 Bars [X10]
 Baths, Ancient [X50]
 Biblical characters, Named [X00]
 Boards of trade (Chambers of commerce) [X10]
 Botanical gardens [X51]
 Boundary lines [X51]
 Bridges [X51]
 Broadcasting stations [X10]
 Buildings, Private [X10]
 Buildings occupied by corporate bodies [X10]
 Bus terminals [X10]</p> <p>Calderas [X51]
 Camps [X51]
 Canals [X51]
 Capitols [X10]
 Castles [X10]
 Cathedrals [X10]
 Caves [X51]
 Cemeteries [X51]
 Churches (in use or in ruins) [X10]
 Cities, Extinct (pre-1500) [X51]
 City halls [X10]
 City sections (entered directly) [X51]</p> | <p>City sections (entered subordinately) [X10]
 Civic centers [X10]
 Clans [X00]
 Club houses [X10]
 Coal ash sites [X10]
 Coliseums [X10]
 Collections, Public or Private [X10]
 Collective settlements [X51]
 Colleges [X10]
 Colloquia [X11]
 Comets [X51]
 Comic strips (established under title) [X30]
 Communes [X51]
 Communication satellites [X10]
 Community centers [X10]
 Competitions [X50]
 Computer languages [X50]
 Computer programs (established under title) [X30]
 Computer systems [X50]
 Concentration camps [X51]
 Concert halls [X10]
 Conglomerate corporations, Asian [X10]
 Conservation districts [X51]
 Contests [X50]
 Convention centers [X10]
 Convents [X10]
 Correctional institutions [X10]
 Countries, Groups of, e.g., Developing countries, Communist countries, Islamic countries, etc. [X51]
 Country clubs [X51]
 Counts, Houses of [X00]</p> <p> Court houses [X10]
 Crematories [X10]
 Custom houses [X10]</p> <p>Dams [X51]
 Dance halls [X10]
 Denominations, Religious (individual) [X10]
 Deserts [X51]
 Dispensaries [X10]</p> |
|--|---|

Appendix E

Docks [X51]	Geographic regions, e.g., Antarctic regions, Tropics, etc. [X51]
Dukes, Houses of [X00]	Geologic basins [X51]
Dwellings [X10]	Gods [X50]
Dynasties [X00]	Grain elevators [X10]
Earls, Houses of [X00]	Grasslands [X51]
Ecclesiastical entities that are also names of places, e.g., Basel (Switzerland : Ecclesiastical principality) [X10]	Groups of industries, Named [X10]
Economic zones [X51]	Gymnasiums [X10]
Educational institutions [X10]	
Embassies [X10]	Halfway houses [X10]
Esplanades [X51]	Hazardous waste sites [X51]
Estates [X51]	Herbariums [X51]
Ethnic groups [X50]	Highways [X51]
Events [X50]	Hill figures [X50]
Exhibition buildings [X10]	Historic sites [X51]
Exhibitions [X11]	Historical parks [X51]
Expeditions, Military [X50]	Homes [X10]
Expeditions, Scientific [X11]	Hospitals [X10]
Experiment stations [X10]	Hotels [X10]
Expositions [X11]	Houses (Families) [X00]
	Houses (Structures) [X10]
Factories [X10]	
Fairs [X11]	Immigration stations [X10]
Families [X00]	Industrial groups, Named [X10]
Farms [X51]	Islands, Nonjurisdictional [X51]
Feasts [X50]	
Ferry buildings [X10]	Jurisdictions, Ancient [X51]
Festivals (formally organized) [X11]	
Festivals and celebrations (not formally organized) [X50]	Laboratories [X10]
Festivals, Folk [X50]	Lakes [X51]
Fictitious characters [X50]	Land grants [X51]
Fire stations [X10]	Legendary characters [X50]
Folk festivals and celebrations [X50]	Legendary dynasties [X50]
Forests [X51]	Libraries [X10]
Fortresses (Structures) [X51]	Lighthouses [X10]
Forts (Military posts, fortresses, etc.) [X51]	Lines, Boundary [X51]
Free ports and zones [X51]	
Funds [X10]	Manors [X10]
Funeral homes, mortuaries [X10]	Mansions [X10]
Galaxies [X51]	Market buildings [X10]
Galleries [X10]	Marketplaces (Ancient) [X51]
Games (Events, except Olympic Games) [X50]	Markets [X10]
Gardens [X51]	Military installations (active and inactive) [X51]
Gas fields [X51]	Mills [X10]
Gates [X50]	Mine buildings [X10]
	Mines [X51]
	Mints [X10]
	Model railroads [X50]
	Monasteries [X10]
	Monuments (Structures, statues, etc.) [X50]

Appendix E

- Morgues [X10]
- Mortuaries [X10]
- Motels [X10]
- Motion pictures [X30]
- Mountains [X51]
- Movements, Social [X50]
- Movie theaters [X10]
- Museums [X10]
- Music halls [X10]
- Night clubs [X10]
- Nuclear power stations [X10]
- Nursing homes [X10]
- Observatories [X10]
- Ocean currents [X51]
- Office buildings [X10]
- Official residences [X10]
- Old age homes [X10]
- Olympic Games (as a heading) [X11]
- Open spaces [X51]
- Opera houses [X10]
- Orders of Knighthood [X10]
- Orphanages [X10]
- Pagodas [X10]
- Palaces [X10]
- Parks [X51]
- Pipelines [X51]
- Plains [X51]
- Plans (Programs) [X10]
- Plantations [X51]
- Playgrounds [X51]
- Plazas (Open spaces, squares, etc.) [X51]
- Police stations [X10]
- Poorhouses [X10]
- Port authorities [X10]
- Ports (Physical facilities) [X51]
- Post offices [X10]
- Power plants [X10]
- Presidential mansions [X10]
- Prisons [X10]
- Programs [X10]
- Projects [X10]
- Public comfort stations [X10]
- Pyramids [X50]
- Races (Contests) [X50]
- Racetracks [X10]
- Radio programs [X30]
- Railroad models [X50]
- Railroad tunnels [X51]
- Railroads [X10]
- Railway stations [X10]
- Ranches [X51]
- Recreation areas [X51]
- Refugee camps [X51]
- Regions, Geographic, e.g., Antarctic regions, Tropics, etc. [X51]
- Reservations, Indian [X51]
- Reserves (Parks, forests, etc.) [X51]
- Reservoirs [X51]
- Resorts [X10]
- Restaurants [X10]
- Rivers [X51]
- Roads [X51]
- Rooms [X50]
- Royal houses (Families) [X00]
- Sanitary landfills [X51]
- Sanitation districts [X51]
- Sanitoriums [X10]
- School districts [X10]
- Schools [X10]
- Schools of artists [X50]
- Seas [X51]
- Seminars [X11]
- Service stations [X10]
- Shipyards [X10]
- Shopping centers [X10]
- Shows (Exhibitions) [X11]
- Shrines (not churches) [X50]
- Social movements [X50]
- Software, Computer (established under title) [X30]
- Spas [X10]
- Sports arenas [X10]
- Sports events [X50]
- Squares [X51]
- Stadiums [X10]
- Stars (Individual) [X51]
- Stars (Types) [X50]
- Statues [X50]
- Steppes [X51]
- Stock exchanges [X10]
- Stores, Retail [X10]
- Streets [X51]
- Structures (nongeographic, e.g., towers) [X50]
- Studies (Research projects) [X10]
- Stupas [X50]
- Symposia [X11]
- Television programs [X30]
- Temples (in use or in ruins) [X10]

Appendix E

| Terminal buildings [X10]

Tests [X50]

Theater buildings [X10]

Theater companies [X10]

Tombs [X50]

Towers [X50]

Trails [X51]

Tribes (as legal entities only) [X10]

Tribes (Ethnic groups) [X50]

Tunnels [X51]

U.S. National Park Service, U.S.

Forest Service, and U.S. Fish

and Wildlife Service units named after
a park, forest, etc. [X51]

Undertakers [X10]

Universities [X10]

Valleys [X51}

Villas [X10]

Walls [X50]

Warehouses [X10]

Waterways [X51]

Wildlife refuges [X51]

Workshops [X11]

Zaibatsu [X10]

Zoos [X51]

Initial Definite and Indefinite Articles

The second indicator position in the 1XX Heading, 4XX See From Tracing, and 5XX See Also From Tracing fields contains a numeric value (0-9) that specifies the number of character positions associated with an initial definite or indefinite article when the article is to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes. Initial articles may also simply be deleted in the formulation of the heading. If the initial article is retained but is not to be disregarded in sorting and filing processes, the second indicator position contains value 0.

The following list of definite and indefinite articles and the languages in which they are used is arranged alphabetically by the article.

a	English, Gallegan, Hungarian, Portuguese, Romanian, Scots, Yiddish	c	Norwegian
a'	Gaelic	'c	Friesian
al	Romanian	een	Dutch
al-	Arabic, Baluchi, Brahui, Panjabi (Perso-Arabic script), Persian, Turkish, Urdu	eene	Dutch
	N.B. <i>al-</i> is meant to cover all the spellings in romanization, e.g., <i>as</i> in <i>as-sijil</i>	egy	Hungarian
am	Gaelic	ei	Norwegian
an	English, Gaelic, Irish, Scots, Yiddish	ein	German, Norwegian
an t-	Gaelic, Irish	eine	German
ane	Scots	einem	German
ang	Tagalog	cinen	German
ang mga	Tagalog	ciner	German
as	Gallegan, Portuguese	cines	German
az	Hungarian	cit	Norwegian
bat	Basque	el	Catalan, Spanish
bir	Turkish	els	Arabic
d'	English	en	Catalan
da	Shetland English	et	Danish, Norwegian
das	German	ett	Swedish
de	Danish, Dutch, English, Friesian, Norwegian, Swedish	eyn	Yiddish
dei	Norwegian	eyne	Yiddish
dem	German	gl'	Italian
den	Danish, German, Norwegian, Swedish	gli	Italian
der	German, Yiddish	ha-	Hebrew
des	German	hai	Classical Greek, Greek
det	Danish, Norwegian, Swedish	he	Hawaiian
di	Yiddish	hē	Classical Greek, Greek
die	Afrikaans, German, Yiddish	he-	Hebrew
dos	Yiddish	heis	Greek
		hen	Greek
		hena	Greek
		henas	Greek
		het	Dutch
		hin	Icelandic
		hina	Icelandic
		hinar	Icelandic

Appendix F

hinir	Icelandic	'o	Neapolitan
hinn	Icelandic	o	Gallegan, Hawaiian, Portuguese, Romanian
hinna	Icelandic	os	Portuguese
hinnar	Icelandic		
hinni	Icelandic	'r	Icelandic
hins	Icelandic	's	German
hinu	Icelandic	sa	Tagalog
hinum	Icelandic	sa mga	Tagalog
hið	Icelandic	si	Tagalog
ho	Classical Greek, Greek	siná	Tagalog
ho-	Hebrew		
hoi	Classical Greek, Greek		
i	Italian	't	Dutch, Friesian
ih'	Provençal	ta	Classical Greek, Greek
il	Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc	tais	Classical Greek
il-	Maltese	tas	Classical Greek
in	Friesian	té	Classical Greek
it	Friesian	tén	Classical Greek, Greek
		tés	Classical Greek, Greek
ka	Hawaiian	the	English
ke	Hawaiian	to	Classical Greek, Greek
l'	Catalan, French, Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc	tois	Classical Greek
l-	Maltese	ton	Classical Greek, Greek
la	Catalan, Esperanto, French, Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc, Spanish	tōn	Classical Greek, Greek
		tou	Classical Greek, Greek
las	Provençal/Langue d'oc, Spanish	um	Portuguese
le	French, Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc	uma	Portuguese
les	Catalan, French, Provençal/ Langue d'oc	un	Catalan, French, Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc, Romanian, Spanish
lh	Provençal/Langue d'oc	un'	Italian
lhi	Provençal/Langue d'oc	una	Catalan, Italian, Provençal/ Langue d'oc, Spanish
li	Provençal/Langue d'oc	une	French
lis	Provençal/Langue d'oc	unei	Romanian
lo	Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc, Spanish	unha	Gallegan
los	Provençal/Langue d'oc, Spanish	uno	Italian, Provençal/Langue d'oc
lou	Provençal/Langue d'oc	uns	Provençal/Langue d'oc
lu	Provençal/Langue d'oc	unui	Romanian
		us	Provençal/Langue d'oc
mga	Tagalog	y	Welsh
ñga	Tagalog	ye	English
ña	Greek	yr	Welsh
	Afrikaans, Dutch, Friesian		
	Gaelic, Hawaiian, Irish		
	Gaelic, Irish		
	Malagasy		

Changes

This section is provided for the change summary sheets that accompany each update to the *USMARC Format for Authority Data*.

USMARC FORMAT FOR AUTHORITY DATA FORMAT CHANGES

This new edition of the USMARC format includes *Authorities: A MARC Format* through *Update No. 2*, the changes resulting from proposals which were considered by the ALA RTSD/LITA/RASD Committee on Representation in Machine-Readable Form of Bibliographic Information (MARBI) at its June 1986 and June 1987 meetings, and several other small changes. The changes are listed below under Content Changes.

Also noted below are corrections that were made concerning obsolete data elements and repeatability of data. Obsolete data elements and data elements used only in older records are listed in Appendix B, not in the field descriptors.

Since the general text of many pages has been edited, the parts of the actual pages that have been changed due to the June 1986 and June 1987 proposals have not been indicated with a vertical bar in the text, as is the usual practice with updates. Pages for Appendix G dated June 1987 indicate the changes in terminology resulting from general editing of the text.

CONTENT CHANGES

008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules code

Addition: Code "z - Other" was added.

008/35-37 Language of heading code

Change: This element was made obsolete.

045 Time Period of Heading

Addition: Subfield \$c (Pre-9999 B.C. time period, formatted) was added.

050 Library of Congress Call Number

Change: The second indicator was defined as "Source of call number" with two values "0 - Assigned by LC" and "4 - Assigned by agency other than LC."

Addition: Subfield \$5 (Institution to which the field applies) was defined.

060 National Library of Medicine Call Number

Addition: This new field was defined.

Appendix G

June 1987

070 National Agricultural Library Call Number

Addition: This new field was defined.

082 Dewey Decimal Call Number

Addition: This new field was defined.

090 Local Call Number (Series)

Change: This specific field was removed; it was replaced by a page entitled "09X Local Call Numbers." Field 090 is listed under the heading "Previously Used in Older Records" in Appendix B.

Obsolete Data Elements

Change: The following tags which had never been defined were marked obsolete: 002, 668. The following subfields were marked obsolete to align them with the *USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data*: #b in fields 111, 411, 511, 151, 451, and 551.

Repeatability

Change: The following subfields were marked repeatable to align them with the *USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data*: #k in fields 100, 400, 500, 111, 411, 511, 130, 430, and 530.

ERRATUM: The repeatabilities of fields 042 and 681 are erroneously marked repeatable and not repeatable, respectively in the June 1987 text. The correct designations are:

042 Authentication Code (NR)
681 Subject Example Tracing Note (R)

Content Designator Terminology Changes

This list identifies the differences between content designator names in the current *USMARC Format for Authority Data* and the previous *Authorities: A MARC Format* (base text through Update No. 2, June 1986).

	Previous	Current
LEADER		
/05	Record status d - Record deleted (explanation may be present in field 682) s - Record deleted because heading has been split into two headings	Record status d - Record deleted (other) s - Record deleted because heading has been split into two or more headings
/17	Encoding level n - Record contains necessary authority data o - Record does not contain complete authority data	Encoding level n - Complete authority record o - Incomplete authority record
/23	Undefined character	Undefined Entry map character position
VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS		
001	Authority Record Control Number	Control Number
008	Fixed-Length Data Elements	Fixed-Length Data Elements
/07	Romanization scheme	Romanization scheme code
/09	Kind of record code a - Authorized heading record f - Authorized heading and subdivision record	Kind of record code a - Established heading record f - Established heading and subdivision record
/10	Cataloging rules code d - Non-AACR 2 form	Descriptive cataloging rules code d - AACR 2 compatible heading z - Other
/11	Subject heading system code a - Library of Congress b - LC Children's Literature	Subject heading system/thesaurus code a - Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH) b - LC Subject Headings for Children's Literature

Appendix G

	Previous	Current
	<p>c - National Library of Medicine</p> <p>d - National Agricultural Library</p> <p>k - National Library of Canada English Headings</p> <p>v - National Library of Canada French Headings</p>	<p>c - Medical Subject Headings (MeSH)</p> <p>d - National Agricultural Library subject authority file</p> <p>k - Canadian Subject Headings</p> <p>v - Répertoire des vedettes-matière</p>
008/12	Type of series code c - Series-like phrase not to be considered a series	Type of series code c - Series-like phrase
/13	Numbered/unnumbered series code c - Series numbering varies between numbered and unnumbered	Numbered/unnumbered series code c - Series numbering varies
/29	Reference evaluation code a - Tracings have been evaluated ... b - Tracings have not been evaluated ...	Reference evaluation code a - Tracings are consistent with the heading b - Tracings are not necessarily consistent with the heading
/33	Status of authority heading code a - Fully established heading that has been used on a bibliographic record	Level of establishment code a - Fully established heading
/35-37	Language of heading code	Undefined
/38	Modified record code s - Record is shortened because record length exceeds maximum allowable length x - Record contains characters that cannot be input because they are not in the character set	Modified record code s - Record is shortened x - Record is missing characters

Appendix G

	Previous	Current
VARIABLE DATA FIELDS		
010	LC Authority Record Control Number	Library of Congress Control Number
014	Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item (Series) #a - Control number of the bibliographic record for the serial or multipart item	Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item #a - Control number of related bibliographic record
020	International Standard Book Number (Series)	International Standard Book Number
022	International Standard Serial Number (Series)	International Standard Serial Number
045	Chronological Code or Date/Time <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of date/time recorded in subfield #b ø - No date/time recorded 1 - Multiple single date/time #+a - Chronological code #+b - Chronological date/time	Time Period of Heading <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of time period in subfield #b or #c ø - Subfield #b or #c not present 1 - Multiple single dates/times #+a - Time period code #+b - 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period, formatted #+c - Pre-9999 B.C. time period, formatted
050	Library of Congress Call Number (Series) <u>Indicator 2</u> - Undefined	Library of Congress Call Number <u>Indicator 2</u> - Source of call number 0 Assigned by LC 4 Assigned by agency other than LC #+5 Institution to which the field applies
052	Geographic Classification Code #+a - Area #+b - Subarea	Geographic Classification Code #+a - Geographic classification area code #+b - Geographic classification subarea code
073	Subdivision Usage	Subdivision Usage #+z - Source

Appendix G

	Previous	Current
083	Dewey Decimal Classification Number #2 - Source	Dewey Decimal Classification Number #2 - Edition number
090	Local Call Number (Series)	09X Local Call Numbers
100	Established Heading—Personal Name <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of personal name 3 - Name of family #a - Name #d - Dates #e - Relator #h - Media qualifier #l - Language #n - Number of part/section #q - Qualification of name #x - General subject subdivision #y - Chronological subject subdivision #z - Geographic subject subdivision	Heading—Personal Name <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of personal name entry element 3 - Family name #a - Personal name #d - Dates associated with a name #e - Relator term #h - Medium #l - Language of a work #n - Number of part/section of a work #q - Fuller form of name #x - General subdivision #y - Chronological subdivision #x - Geographic subdivision
110	Established Heading—Corporate Name <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of corporate name 0 - Surname (inverted) 1 - Geographic name #a - Name #b - Each subordinate unit in hierarchy #c - Place #d - Date #n - Number of part/section/conference <i>See also subfields #e, #h, #l, #x, #y, and #z under 100</i>	Heading—Corporate Name <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of corporate name entry element 0 - Inverted name 1 - Jurisdiction name #a - Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element #b - Subordinate unit #c - Location of meeting #d - Date of meeting or treaty signing #n - Number of part/section/meeting
111	Established Heading—Conference or Meeting Name <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of conference name 0 - Surname (inverted) 1 - Geographic name with conference subheading #a - Name #c - Place	Heading—Meeting Name <u>Indicator 1</u> - Type of meeting name entry element 0 - Inverted name 1 - Jurisdiction name #a - Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element #c - Location of meeting

Appendix G

	Previous	Current
	<p>#d - Date #n - Number of part/section/ conference #q - Name of conference following place as entry element <i>See also subfields #h, #l, #x, #y, and #z under 100</i></p>	<p>#d - Date of meeting #n - Number of part/section/meeting #q - Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element</p>
130	<p>Established Heading—Uniform Title #a - Uniform title heading <i>See also subfields #h, #l, #n, #x, #y, and #z under 100</i></p>	<p>Heading—Uniform Title #a - Uniform title</p>
150	<p>Established Heading—Topical Subject #a - Topical subject or name of place as entry element #b - Name following place as entry element <i>See also subfields #x, #y, and #z under 100</i></p>	<p>Heading—Topical Term #a - Topical term or geographic name as entry element #b - Topical term following geographic name as entry element</p>
151	<p>Established Heading—Geographic Name #a - Geographic name or name of place as entry element <i>See also subfields #x, #y, and #z under 100</i></p>	<p>Heading—Geographic Name #a - Geographic name</p>
260	<p>General Explanatory See Reference (Subjects)</p>	<p>Complex See Reference—Subject</p>
360	<p>General Explanatory See Also Reference (Subjects)</p>	<p>Complex See Also Reference—Subject</p>

Control subfield #w in 4XX and 5XX fields

#w/1	<p>Tracing use restriction code a - Appropriate for use in the name authority reference only b - Appropriate for use in the subject authority reference only c - Appropriate for use in the series authority reference structure only d - Appropriate for use in the name and subject authority reference structures only e - Appropriate for use in the name and series authority reference structures only</p>	<p>#w/1 Tracing use restriction code a - Name reference structure only b - Subject reference structure only c - Series reference structure only d - Name and subject reference structures e - Name and series reference structures</p>
------	--	---

Appendix G

	Previous	Current
	<p>f - Appropriate for use in the subject and series authority reference structures only</p> <p>g - Appropriate for use in the name, subject, and series authority reference structures</p>	<p>f - Subject and series reference structures</p> <p>g - Name, subject, and series reference structures</p>
#w/3	<p>Reference display/print restriction code</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a - No reference is made b - Reference is not displayed from a tracing because it is covered by a separate reference record containing a field 664 c - Reference is not displayed from a tracing because it is covered by a 663 note field d - Reference is not displayed from a tracing because it is covered by an information or history reference note in field 665 	<p>#w/3 Reference display code</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a - Reference not displayed b - Reference not displayed, field 664 used c - Reference not displayed, field 663 used d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used
400	<p>See From Tracing—Personal Name</p> <p>#i - Text of reference instruction phrase</p> <p><i>See also listing under 100 and Control subfield #w</i></p>	<p>See From Tracing—Personal Name</p> <p>#i - Reference instruction phrase</p>
410	<p>See From Tracing—Corporate Name</p> <p>#i - Text of reference instruction phrase</p> <p><i>See also listing under 110 and Control subfield #w</i></p>	<p>See From Tracing—Corporate Name</p> <p>#i - Reference instruction phrase</p>
411	<p>See From Tracing—Conference or Meeting Name</p> <p>#i - Text of reference instruction phrase</p> <p><i>See also listing under 111 and Control subfield #w</i></p>	<p>See From Tracing—Meeting Name</p> <p>#i - Reference instruction phrase</p>
430	<p>See From Tracing—Uniform Title</p> <p>#i - Text of reference instruction phrase</p> <p><i>See also listing under 130 and Control subfield #w</i></p>	<p>See From Tracing—Uniform Title</p> <p>#i - Reference instruction phrase</p>
450	<p>See From Tracing—Topical Subject</p> <p>#i - Text of reference instruction phrase</p> <p><i>See also listing under 150 and Control subfield #w</i></p>	<p>See From Tracing—Topical Term</p> <p>#i - Reference instruction phrase</p>

Appendix G

	Previous	Current
451	See From Tracing—Geographic Name ‡i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 151 and Control subfield ‡w</i>	See From Tracing—Geographic Name ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
500	See Also From Tracing—Personal Name ‡i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 100 and Control subfield ‡w</i>	See Also From Tracing—Personal Name ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
510	See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name ‡i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 110 and Control subfield ‡w</i>	See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
511	See Also From Tracing—Conference or Meeting Name ‡i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 111 and Control subfield ‡w</i>	See Also From Tracing—Meeting Name ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
530	See From Tracing—Uniform Title ‡i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 130 and Control subfield ‡w</i>	See From Tracing—Uniform Title ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
550	See Also From Tracing—Topical Subject ‡i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 150 and Control subfield ‡w</i>	See From Tracing—Topical Term ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
551	See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name ‡i - Text of reference instruction phrase <i>See also listing under 151 and Control subfield ‡w</i>	See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
640	Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation (Series) ‡z - Source	Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation ‡z - Source of information
641	Numbering peculiarities (Series) ‡z - Source	Series Numbering Peculiarities ‡z - Source of information
642	Series Numbering Example (Series)	Series Numbering Example

Appendix G

	Previous	Current
643	Place and Publisher/Issuing Body (Series)	Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body
644	Analysis Practice (Series)	Series Analysis Practice
645	Tracing Practice (Series) ‡a - Series tracing practice t - Used as a series added entry (traced) n - Not used as a series added entry (not traced)	Series Tracing Practice ‡a - Series tracing practice code t - Traced as a series added entry n - Not traced as a series added entry
646	Classification Practice (Series) ‡a - Series classification practice c - Volumes in the series are classified as a collection m - Volumes in the series are classified with the main series s - Volumes in the series are classified separately	Series Classification Practice ‡a - Series classification practice code c - Volumes are classified as a collection m - Volumes are classified with main or other series s - Volumes are classified separately
663	Cataloger-Generated See Also Reference (Names) ‡a - Instruction term ‡t - Related title	Complex See Also Reference—Name ‡a - Explanatory text ‡t - Title referred to
664	Cataloger-Generated See Reference (Names) ‡a - Instruction term ‡t - Related title	Complex See Reference—Name ‡a - Explanatory text ‡t - Title referred to
665	Information or History Reference (Names) ‡a - Information or history reference	History Reference ‡a - History reference
666	General Explanatory Reference (Names)	General Explanatory Reference—Name
667	Usage or Scope (Names) ‡a - Usage note	Name Usage or Scope Note ‡a - Usage or scope note
675	Source Data Not Found ‡a - Citations for reference sources in which no data was found	Source Data Not Found ‡a - Source citation

Appendix G

	Previous	Current
680	Scope Note (Subjects) #a - Subject heading	Subject Scope Note #a - Subject heading or subdivision term
681	Example Under/Note Under (Subjects) #a - Subject heading	Subject Example Tracing Note #a - Subject heading or subdivision term
682	Deleted Heading Information #a - Heading	Deleted Heading Information #a - Replacement heading

USMARC FORMAT FOR AUTHORITY DATA

Update No. 1, February 1988

These revised pages constitute the first update to the USMARC Format for Authority Data (1987).

The update contains some additions/changes to byte 2 in subfield **#w** (Control subfield) resulting from a proposal which was considered by the ALA RTSD/LITA/RASD Committee on Representation in Machine-Readable Form of Bibliographic Information (MARBI) at its January 9, 1988 meeting. Certain pages have also been reissued because of some general editing of names and definitions of content designators. In addition, "LC Guideline" pages have been included for the first time; such pages present LC guidelines for National Coordinated Cataloging Operations (NACO) participants contributing records to the Library of Congress authority files via the Linked Systems Project and information relating to authority records created by the Library of Congress.

The major revisions included in this update are listed below. The page numbers of such revisions are specified in the "Replacement Page No." column. On the actual pages that have been revised, a vertical bar indicates that part of the text that has been changed.

Note: The cover sheets to this update should be filed behind the divider "G - Terminology Changes" in the USMARC authority format.

CHANGE SUMMARY

	<u>Replacement Page No.</u>
008/08, 18-27, 30, 34-37 Undefined character position	
Change: The National Level Requirement (NLR) code was changed from "M" to "O."	008-p.1 008/08-p.1
Change: The definition was expanded to include the fill character.	008/18-27-p.1 008/30-p.1 008-34-37-p.1
008/31 Record update in process	
Change: The second sentence under "Character Position Definition and Scope" was changed slightly.	008/31-p.1

Appendix G

February 1988

		<u>Replacement Page No.</u>
008/32 Undifferentiated personal name	Change: The last sentence in the first paragraph under "Character Position Definition and Scope" was changed. The third example under code "a" pertaining to a family name was moved under code "n," and the explanation of code "n" was changed slightly.	008/32-p.1,p.2
008/38 Modified record code	Change: The code names shortened.	008/38-p.1
052 Geographic Classification Code	Change: The second paragraph under "Field Definition and Scope" was rewritten. Addition: A sentence was added to the description of subfield †a and to the description of subfield †b. "Input Conventions" information was also added.	052-p.1 052-p.2
070 National Agricultural Library Call Number	Change: The description of subfield †b was rewritten.	070-p.2
Tracings and References	Change: †w/2 - The name was changed from "Earlier cataloging rules code" to "Earlier form of heading." The name of code "a" was changed from "Form of heading established under earlier cataloging rules" to "Pre-AACR 2 form of heading." Change: The descriptions of †w/2 and code "a" were changed. Addition: Code "e" (Earlier established form of heading) was added to †w/2. Addition: A description of code "e" and several examples were added.	Tracings/References-p.1,8 Tracings/References-p.8 Tracings/References-p.1,8 Tracings/References-p.8
Appendix A - Table of Content Designators	Change: Modifications were made to with the agree text.	App. A-p.2,3,4, 5,11,14

LC Guidelines

These pages are being issued for the first time. They should be filed at the end of the main text of the field/element to which they pertain in the format document.

Appendix C
August 1988

USMARC FORMAT FOR AUTHORITY DATA

Update No. 2, August 1988

These revised pages constitute the second update to the *USMARC Format for Authority Data* (1987).

The update contains some additions/changes to character position 2 in subfield #1 (Control subfield) resulting from a proposal that was considered by the AL/RTSD/LITA/RASD Committee on Representation in Machine-Readable Form of Bibliographic Information (MARBI) at its July 9, 1988 meeting. Certain pages have also been reissued to align names and definitions with the *USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data*.

The major revisions included in this update are listed below. The page numbers of these revisions are specified in the "Replacement Page No." column. On the actual page that have been revised, a vertical bar indicates that part of the text that has been changed. A page may contain a new date but no vertical bars when the content of the page has been shifted due to changes on other pages.

Note: The cover sheets to this update should be filed behind the divider "G - Terminology Changes" along with the following:

Appendix G - Changes [Content Changes] (June 1987)

Appendix G - Content Designator Terminology Changes (June 1987)

Appendix G - *USMARC Format for Authority Data* Update No. 1, February 1988

The Library of Congress will not distribute records containing format changes listed below before March 1, 1989.

CHANGE SUMMARY

		<u>Replacement Page No.</u>
Introduction		
Editorial:	The phrase "[In preparation]" was deleted from the <i>USMARC Concise Formats</i> citation; this publication is now available. The <i>USMARC History of Content Designation</i> citation was deleted; this item will not be published because history information is contained in each USMARC format document.	Intro.-p.2
Editorial:	Information was added to clarify the presentation of the variable data fields in related-function groupings. The description of Appendix G was changed to clarify its use as a repository of all change summary pages, not just those relative to terminology.	Intro.-p.10

Appendix G

August 1988

Replacement
Page No.

Summary Statement of Content Designators

Change: The word "code" was deleted from the names of the relevant character positions of field 008. Summary-p.1
Note: The individual character position descriptions will not be reissued until major changes are made to the data elements.

Leader/05 Record status

Change: Some code names were shortened. Leader-p.1,2,3

008/28 Type of government agency

Change: The word "code" was deleted from the name of the character position. The name of code a was modified by changing "Yugoslav Republic" to "Yugoslavia." The name of code z was changed from "Government agency—type other than can be specified by other codes" to "Other type of government agency."

020 International Standard Book Number

Change: The initialism "(ISBN)" was deleted from the name of subfield #a. 020-p.1,2

022 International Standard Serial Number

Change: The initialism "(ISSN)" was deleted from the name of subfield #a. 022-p.1,2

Change: The parenthetical qualifier of the display constant associated with subfield #y was changed from "(invalid)" to "(incorrect)."

042 Authentication Code

Change: The repeatability was changed from (R) to (NR). 042-p.1

045 Time Period of Heading

Change: The name of subfield #b was changed from "9999 B.C. through A.D. time period, formatted" to "Formatted 9999 B.C. through A.D. time period." The name of subfield #c was changed from "Pre-9999 B.C. time period, formatted" to "Formatted pre-9999 B.C. time period." 045-p.1,4,5

Addition: "Input Conventions" information was added. 045-p.5

073 Subdivision Usage

Addition: Subfield #z (Source) was defined. (Pages for this change were issued in the base text in June 1987, but the change was not noted on the change summary.) - - -

Dewey Decimal Call Number

Addition: "Display Constant" information was added. 082-p.3

Appendix G

August 1988

		Replacement <u>Page No.</u>
X10	Corporate Names—General Information Addition: "Shipyards" was added to the ambiguous headings list.	X10-p.10
X51	Geographic Names—General Information Addition: "Herbariums" was added to the ambiguous headings list.	X51-p.4
	Tracings and Reference Fields—General Information Change: $\#w/2$ - The name of code a was changed by the addition of the qualifier "(national name authority file)." The name of code e was changed by the addition of the qualifier "(national authority file)." Addition: Code o (Earlier established form of heading (other authority file) was added to subfield $\#w/2$. Change: The word "code" was deleted from the names of subfields $\#w/0$ and $\#w/3$. Change: The description of subfield $\#w/2$ was modified.	Tracings/References-p.1,8 Tracings/References-p.1,9 Tracings/References-p.5,9 Tracings/References-p.8
681	Subject Example Tracing Note Change: The repeatability was changed from (NR) to (R).	681-p.1
	Appendix A—Table of Content Designators Change: Modifications were made to agree with the main text.	App.A-p.1,3, 5,11,15
	Appendix B—Obsolete and Previously Used Content Designators Change: Under field 050, "Indicator 1" was changed to "Indicator 2."	App.B-p.4
	Appendix E—Alphabetical List of Ambiguous Headings Change: Modifications were made to agree with the main text.	App.E-p.2,3
	LC Guidelines pages Addition: Subfield $\#w/2$ code o added as content designator not implemented at LC. Change: The names of Leader/05 codes were modified to agree with the main text. Change: The description of the content of the unused positions in the serial number was changed from "blanks" to "zeroes." Change: Under "NACO LSP Usage," 008/17 was removed from the listing of character positions. Change: Both usage statements were modified to include the use of a fill character (). Addition: The names of subfield $\#w/2$ codes a and e were modified to agree with the main text. Code o usage statements were added. Addition: Subfield $\#w/2$ usage statements for codes, a, e, and o were added.	Format Summary Leader 001 008 008/17 Tracings and References-page 2,3 Tracings and References-page 4,5

**USMARC FORMAT FOR AUTHORITY DATA
CHANGE SUMMARY**

Update No. 3, March 1990

These revised pages constitute the third update to the *USMARC Format for Authority Data* (1987).

The major revisions included in this update are listed below. This list identifies a new subfield code and a change in subfield repeatability that resulted from proposals considered by the ALA ALCTS/LITA/RASD Machine-Readable Bibliographic Information Committee (MARBI) at its meetings in January and June 1989. Also listed are editorial and other changes made to content designator descriptions, guidelines, and examples. Four new *General Information* pages are being added in this update, and several *LC Guidelines* pages are revised. On the replacement pages, a vertical bar marks the changes that are included in this Change Summary.

A page may contain a March 1990 date but no vertical bar when the content of the page has been shifted due to changes on other pages or a minor editorial change (i.e., one not listed in the Change Summary) has been made. Minor editorial changes include:

- the deletion of unnecessary words (e.g., *code, the*) and parenthetical acronyms in content designators names
- the correction of typographical errors
- changes in *Related Document* areas
- changes in *Display Constants* presentation

	<u>Replacement Page No.</u>
■ <i>New content designator:</i>	
040 Cataloging Source, subfield #f (Subject heading/thesaurus conventions)	1,3
■ <i>Repeatability of subfield #e (Relator term) changed from (NR) to (R):</i>	
X00 Personal Names—General Information	1
X10 Corporate Names—General Information	1
■ <i>Editorial changes:</i>	
<u>Content Designator History area added</u>	
Leader	6
008 Fixed-Length Data Elements—General Information	2
008/17 Type of subject subdivision	3
008/29 Reference evaluation	2
008/34-37 Undefined character positions	1
045 Time Period of Heading	5
050 Library of Congress Call Number	4
09X Local Call Numbers	1
X11 Meeting Names—General Information	9
X51 Geographic Names—General Information	6

Appendix G

March 1990

Replacement
Page No.

Editorial changes: (Cont.)

New General Information pages

00X	Control Fields—General Information
01X-09X	Numbers and Codes—General Information
64X	Series Treatment—General Information
66X-68X	Notes—General Information

Others (definitions, guidelines)

Introduction	2,11,12
008/09 Kind of record (code c: use of <i>field 260</i> for subjects)	2
008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus	3
008/12 Type of series	1,2
008/13 Numbered/unnumbered series (codes applicable to <i>series-like phrases</i>)	1,2
040 Cataloging Source	2
X10 Corporate Names—General Information (first indicator value 1: applicable to <i>city sections</i>)	3
260 Complex See Reference—Subject (4XX restriction removed)	1

■ Examples added, deleted, or having content designator changes:

008/09 Kind of record	2
050 Library of Congress Call Number	2,3
X00 Personal Names—General Information	5,13
X10 Corporate Names—General Information	3,5,6,7,10
X11 Meeting Names—General Information	8
151 Heading—Geographic Name	1
Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information	7
411 See From Tracing—Meeting Name	1
430 See From Tracing—Uniform Title	1
530 See Also From Tracing—Uniform Title	1
550 See Also From Tracing—Topical Term	1
551 See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name	1
644 Series Analysis Practice	3
646 Series Classification Practice	2
Appendix D - Full Record Examples	9,11
Appendix F - Initial Definite and Indefinite Articles	1,2

■ Changes in Ambiguous Headings lists:

X50 Topical Terms—General Information	4
X51 Geographic Names—General Information	4,5

■ Changes made in Appendixes to reflect main text:

A - Table of Content Designators	5
C - Summary of Data Coding Interdependencies	1,2
E - Alphabetical List of Ambiguous Headings	3,4

■ *LC Guidelines:*

NACO LSP Usage changes

008/28 Type of government agency
040 Cataloging Source
Tracings and References, subfield \$w/1 (p.2)
642 Series Numbering Example
644 Series Analysis Practice
645 Series Tracing Practice
646 Series Classification Practice

LC Usage changes

Format Summary (008/29 deleted; 040\$1 added)
008/06 Direct/Indirect geographic subdivision
008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus
008/31 Record update in process (text deleted)
040 Cataloging Source
X00 Personal Names—General Information
040 Tracings and References, subfield \$w (p.3,4)
642 Series Numbering Example
643 Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body (text deleted)
644 Series Analysis Practice (text deleted)

LC GUIDELINES

The LC guidelines for authority records are issued with and intended to be used in conjunction with the *USMARC Format for Authority Data*. They were compiled by the Network Development and MARC Standards Office, with the assistance of the MARC Editorial Division, the National Coordinated Cataloging Operations section of the Descriptive Cataloging Division, the Office for Descriptive Cataloging Policy, and the Subject Cataloging Division.

Scope of LC guidelines

The LC guidelines present information relating to two areas of usage in authority records: 1) usage pertaining to records contributed to the Library of Congress authority files by participants in the National Coordinated Cataloging Operations (NACO) via the Linked Systems Project (LSP); and 2) usage pertaining to authority records created by the Library of Congress. Records created by LC includes name, series, and subject authority records.

The guidelines were developed from various internal and published documents, including *Authorities: A MARC Format*, the *National Level Authority Record*, and the *NACO/LSP Manual*.

Direction for use of LC guidelines

The LC guidelines for authority records should be used by institutions participating in NACO LSP that create authority records to be added to the Library of Congress authority files. The guidelines may also be used by institutions that need or want to know special LC practice in authority records.

At present, only Name and Series authority records are accepted from NACO participants via LSP. NACO LSP participants are instructed not to use those data elements that are appropriate only to Subject authority records.

These guidelines are intended to be used in conjunction with the *USMARC Format for Authority Data*. Data requirements that are not specific to NACO LSP and/or LC are presented only in the main text of the authorities format.

NACO LSP participants and Library of Congress staff creating authority records must also apply the appropriate procedures presented in various LC cataloging documents (e.g., the *LC Descriptive Cataloging Manual*). These related documents are not referenced in the *USMARC Format for Authority Data* nor in the LC guidelines for authority records.

Organization of LC guidelines

The guidelines pages should be filed at the end of the main text of the field to which they apply in the authorities format. Each guidelines page is marked at the top with the three-digit tag of the field to which it applies.

Introduction LC Guidelines

NACO LSP Usage is given first, with a list of data elements and explanatory text where appropriate. When there is no special NACO LSP usage, any data requirements detailed in the main text of Authority format are still applicable.

LC Usage follows NACO LSP Usage. Some LC usage may be more restrictive than that prescribed for NACO LSP participants. NACO LSP participants may not necessarily be restricted from using specific data elements even though LC does not use them. These differences are noted when they occur.

CONTENT DESIGNATORS NOT IMPLEMENTED AT LC

The following list presents those data elements (i.e., fields, indicators, subfields, and codes) that have not been implemented at the Library of Congress. Note: Some data elements that have been implemented at LC may not be used in authority records contributed to the LC database as part of the Linked Systems Project (LSP) via the National Coordinated Cataloging Operations (NACO). Instructions for NACO LSP participants are given on the LC guidelines pages for the specific field or character position. The data elements listed here should not be found in authority records originating from the Library of Congress.

<u>Field</u>	<u>Character Position</u>	<u>Values</u>		
Leader	05	a,s,x		
008				
	09	d,c,f,g		
	10	z		
	11	c,d,k,r,v,z		
	17	a,b,c,d,e		
	39	u		
<u>Field</u>		<u>First Indicator</u>	<u>Second Indicator</u>	<u>Subfields</u>
Any				#6
014	(entire field)			
040				#b, #f
042	(entire field)			
045	(entire field)			
050		0,4		#5
052	(entire field)			
060	(entire field)			
066	(entire field)			
070	(entire field)			
072	(entire field)			
073	(entire field)			
082	(entire field)			
4XX				#w/0: code h; #w/2: code o; #5
5XX				#w/0: code h; #w/2: code o; #5
667				#5
680				#5
688	(entire field)			
880	(entire field)			

Leader

NACO LSP Usage:

Leader/05 (Record status)

The following codes may not be used:

- a - Increase in encoding level
- d - Deleted (other)
- s - Deleted; heading split into two or more headings
- x - Deleted; heading replaced by another heading

If a NACO LSP participant identifies an authority record that should be deleted from the LC authority file, LC NACO must be consulted and will have the record deleted. NACO LSP participants are not permitted to actually perform the deletion of the record from the LC file.

Leader/17 (Encoding level)

Use code o for Early Notice Records.

LC Usage:

Leader/05 (Record status)

| LC does not use codes a, s, and x.

Leader/17 (Encoding level)

LC uses code o for Early Notice Records.

Directory

NACO LSP Usage:

The Directory is always system generated.

LC Usage:

The Directory is system generated.

001 Control Number

NACO LSP Usage:

Structure

The control number is a NACO Control Number and has the following structure:

Alphabetic prefix - Three character positions contain the alphabetic prefix. The valid control number prefixes are:

- nþþ Name and series authority records originally input on the Library of Congress (LC) system
- noþ LSP name and series authority records originally input on the Online Computer Library Center (OCLC) system
- nrþ LSP name and series authority records originally input on the Research Libraries Information Network (RLIN) system
- nwþ LSP name and series authority records originally input on the Western Library Network (WLN) system

The prefix is carried as lowercase characters; it is left justified and unused positions contain blanks (þ).

Year - Two digits represent the year of record creation.

Serial number - One to six digits, right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

Supplement number - For consistency with LC control numbers, a blank (þ) is carried as the last character position of the number.

LC Usage:

Library of Congress and NACO control numbers have the same structure. LC authority record control numbers use the following alphabetic prefixes:

- nþþ Name and series authorities
- shþ Subject authorities

005 Date and Time of Latest Transaction

NACO LSP Usage:

An 005 field is system generated by LC when a NACO LSP record is added to the NACO master file at LC whether there is already an 005 field in the record or not. For a record new to the NACO file, the 005 generated is the first official version identifier for the record. A change or delete record must contain an 005 identical to the one in the NACO file record it is changing or deleting for the change/delete to occur. The 005 is automatically updated when the change/delete record replaces the record in the file. A NACO LSP participant system may supply a preliminary 005 field to new records which will be replaced by the first official 005 at LC when the record is verified.

LC Usage:

The "date and time of latest transaction" is the date and time of the action that approved the record for distribution.

008 Fixed-Length Data Elements—General Information**NACO LSP Usage:**

Do not use the fill character (|) in the following 008 character positions:

- 00-05 Date entered on file
 - 08 Undefined character position
 - 09 Kind of record
 - 10 Descriptive cataloging rules
 - 11 Subject heading system/thesaurus
 - 12 Type of series
 - 13 Numbered/unnumbered series
 - 14 Heading use—main or added entry
 - 15 Heading use—subject added entry
 - 16 Heading use—series added entry
 - 18-27 Undefined character positions
 - 29 Reference evaluation
 - 30 Undefined character position
 - 31 Record update in process
 - 32 Undifferentiated personal name
 - 33 Level of establishment
 - 34 Undefined character position
 - 39 Cataloging source
-

LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) in the following 008 character positions: /00-05, /09-/16, /18-/34, and /39.

008/00-05 Date entered on file

NACO LSP Usage:

The date entered on file is generated by the LSP participant's processing system.

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.

008/06 Direct/indirect geographic subdivision

NACO LSP Usage:

- | Code n (Not applicable) is always used in this character position. Do not use code *b*, *d*, or *i*.
-

LC Usage:

LC has used *b* (blank) meaning *no attempt to code* in most name authorities.

Prior to 1987, geographic subject headings (field 151) may contain code n or a fill character (|) in 008/06. Code n is changed to a *b* (blank) when the record is modified for any other reason.

LC does not use the following code:

d - Subdivided geographically-direct

008/07 Romanization scheme

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use any of the defined codes. Always use the fill character (|) in this position.

LC Usage:

LC uses only the fill character (|) in this character position.

008/08 Undefined character position

NACO LSP Usage:

This position should contain a blank (þ). Do not use the fill character (|) in this position.

LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this undefined character position.

008/09 Kind of record

NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before code b (Reference record (untraced reference)) is used in a reference record containing a 666 general explanatory reference field.

Subject authorities are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP program. Do not use the following codes:

- d - Subdivision record
- e - Node label record
- f - Established heading and subdivision record
- g - Reference and subdivision record

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

LC rarely creates reference records containing a field 666 (General Explanatory Reference—Name); therefore, code b (Reference record (untraced reference)) is rarely used in name authorities. Code b is used in subject authorities that contain field 260 (Complex See Reference—Subject).

LC does not use codes d, e, f, and g.

LC has not implemented the the fill character (|) in this character position.

008/10 Descriptive cataloging rules

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use the following codes:

- a - Earlier rules
- b - AACR 1
- z - Other

Use code n (Not applicable) in traced reference records (008/09 (Kind of record), code c). LC NACO must be consulted before code n is used for special situations, such as when AACR 2 or AACR 2 compatible does not accommodate the establishment of the name or title heading.

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

LC does not currently use codes a, b, and z. Records on the file with codes a or b are changed to c (AACR 2) or d (AACR 2 compatible heading) when modified for any other reason.

LC uses code n (Not applicable) in traced reference records (008/09, code c).

LC also uses code n for special situations, such as when AACR 2 or AACR 2 compatible does not accommodate the establishment of the name or title heading. Code n is also used in most subject heading records.

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.

008/11 Subject heading system/thesaurus

NACO LSP Usage:

Subject authorities are not within the scope of the NACO LSP program. Use code a (Library of Congress Subject Headings) or code n (Not applicable) in this character position. Do not use the following codes: b, c, d, k, v, r, and z.

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

| LC uses code n in reference records (008/09, Kind of record, code b or c).

LC does not use the following codes: b, c, d, k, r, v, and z.

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.

008/12 Type of series

NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before code z (Other) is used.

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.

008/13 Numbered/unnumbered series

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.

008/14 Heading use—main or added entry

NACO LSP Usage:

Code b is also used on a record containing field 664 (Complex See Reference—Name).

LC NACO must be consulted before code b (Heading is not appropriate for use as main or added entry) is used on a reference record containing a field 666 (General Explanatory Reference).

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.

008/15 Heading use—subject added entry

NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before code b (Heading is not appropriate for use as subject added entry) is used.

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.

008/16 Heading use—series added entry

NACO LSP Usage:

Do **not** use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.

008/17 Type of subject subdivision

NACO LSP Usage:

- | Subject authorities are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP program. Either code n (Not applicable) or a fill character (|) may be used in this character position.
-

LC Usage:

- | LC does not create subject subdivision records and has not implemented the codes defined for this character position. A blank (Ø) or a fill character (|) is used.

008/18-27 Undefined character positions

NACO LSP Usage:

These positions should contain blanks (B). Do not input the fill characters (|) in these positions.

LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for these undefined character positions.

008/28 Type of government agency

NACO LSP Usage:

- | There are no special NACO LSP requirements for this character position. If use of a code other than the fill character (|) is desired, the appropriate code may be used.
-

LC Usage:

LC does not use this character position. A fill character (|) is always used.

008/29 Reference evaluation

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use code b (Tracings are not necessarily consistent with the heading) on any new record. When changing an existing record having code b, the references (if any) should be evaluated and the code changed to a (Tracings are consistent with the heading) or n (Not applicable).

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

Code b (Tracings are not necessarily consistent with the heading) may occur in LC records created before the adoption of AACR 2 in Jan. 1981 and will continue to exist until any records containing reference tracings have been evaluated and the authority record updated. All new authority record must contain code a.

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.

008/30 Undefined character position

NACO LSP Usage:

This position should contain a blank (>). Do not input the fill character (|) in this position.

LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this undefined character position.

008/31 Record update in process

NACO LSP Usage:

There are no special NACO LSP requirements for this character position. *Note:* NACO LSP procedures for updating existing name authority records must be followed.

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

| LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.

008/32 Undifferentiated personal name

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.

008/33 Level of establishment

NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before code d (Preliminary) is used.

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

LC uses code d in preliminary name authority records prepared by LC staff of the National Union Catalog if no records exist in the LC database that verify usage of the 1XX headings.

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.

008/34 Undefined character position

NACO LSP Usage:

This position should contain a blank (Ø). Do not use the fill character (|) in this position.

LC Usage:

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this undefined character position.

008/35-37 Undefined character positions

NACO LSP Usage:

These positions should contain blanks (Ø).

LC Usage:

Positions 35-37 were defined as Language of heading code, prior to 1986. LC never coded positions 35-37 for the language of heading. Fill characters (|) were recorded in these positions.

008/38 Modified record

NACO LSP Usage:

Use only blank (\emptyset) in this character position.

Do **not** use code s (Shortened) or x (Missing characters).

LC Usage:

LC has not implemented code s (Shortened) or x (Missing characters). Only the (\emptyset) is used.

008/39 Cataloging source

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use the following codes:

- þ - Library of Congress
- d - Other sources
- u - Unknown

Do not use the fill character (|) in this character position.

LC Usage:

LC does not use code u.

LC has not implemented the fill character (|) for this character position.

01X-09X Numbers and Codes—General Information

NACO LSP Usage:

Alternate Graphic Representation

Records containing alternate graphic representation fields are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project.

Do not use subfield #6 (Linkage) in the following fields:

- 020 International Standard Book Number
- 022 International Standard Serial Number
- 035 System Control Number
- 050 Library of Congress Call Number
- 083 Dewey Decimal Classification Number

Subfield #6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use alternate graphic representation fields in authority records.

010 Library of Congress Control Number

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field.

A system may internally transfer the LC control number from field 001 to field 010 and generate its own control number in field 001.

LC Usage:

LC practice for this field is described under the section for field 010 in the main text of the format. The year portion of the number may be arbitrary when a preprinted name authority worksheet has been used at LC.

014 Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

020 International Standard Book Number

NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before subfields **+c** (Term of availability) or **+z** (Canceled/invalid ISBN) are used in an authority record.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

022 International Standard Serial Number

NACO LSP Usage:

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields:

- #y - Incorrect ISSN
 - #z - Cancelled ISSN
-

LC Usage:

Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:

- #y - Incorrect ISSN
- #z - Cancelled ISSN

February 1988

USMARC Authority

035 System Control Number

NACO LSP Usage:

The use of field 035 is determined by each LSP contributor's system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

040 Cataloging Source

NACO LSP Usage:

Subfield Code

- | Do not use subfield **#b** (Language of cataloging) or **#f** (Subject heading/thesaurus conventions).
-

LC Usage:

Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfields:

- | **#b** - Language of cataloging
- | **#f** - Subject heading/thesaurus conventions

042 Authentication Code

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

043 Geographic Area Code

NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before field 043 is used.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

045 Time Period of Heading

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

050 Library of Congress Call Number**NACO LSP Usage:**

Only call numbers assigned by the Library of Congress are permitted in this field. Call numbers assigned by other organizations are contained in field 090 (Local Call Number). See the LC guidelines for 09X (Local Call Numbers) for more information on field 090.

Use a \emptyset (blank) in the second indicator position. Do not use values 0 or 4.

LC Usage:

LC practice is described in the 050 field description. LC has not yet implemented the second indicator values 0 and 4, nor subfield $\#5$.

Special LC call numbers

Field 050 may contain call numbers that do not follow the Library of Congress classification schedules, for example:

050 $\emptyset\emptyset\#a$ LAW
050 $\emptyset\emptyset\#a$ Microfilm 85/20,233
050 $\emptyset\emptyset\#a$ WMLC L 82/1234

052 Geographic Classification Code

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

053 LC Classification Number

NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before this field is used.

LC Usage:

In for name authority records, LC uses this field for a classification number associated with a newly established name heading for a work of the imagination, other than a work for children.

060 National Library of Medicine Call Number**NACO LSP Usage:**

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

| 066 Character Sets Present

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. Alternate graphic representation fields are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project. Field 066 has not been implemented in the LC system

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

070 National Agricultural Library Call Number

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

072 Subject Category Code

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

073 Subdivision Usage

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

082 Dewey Decimal Call Number

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. The field has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

083 Dewey Decimal Classification Number

NACO LSP Usage:

LC NACO must be consulted before field 083 is used.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

09X Local Call Numbers

NACO LSP Usage:

LC only uses field 090 in the 09X block. Field 090 may contain an LC-style call number, a Dewey Decimal number, or some other system of classification used by an LSP participant. It should not contain Library of Congress call numbers assigned by LC. Field 050 is used for such numbers. Only the NACO library creating the authority record may use field 090.

LC Usage:

LC does not use field 090.

X00 Personal Names—General Information

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicator

First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

NACO LSP participants must follow LC practice in setting the first indicator value for personal names when the name includes an article, preposition, and combinations of the two.

LC Usage:

Indicator

First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

LC treats a surname as a *single* surname when it begins with one of the following articles, prepositions, or a combination of the two. Note that the following is not a complete list of such prefixes and that the articles, prepositions, or combinations may appear in both upper and lower case, may contain a space or hyphen, and/or may be modified by diacritical marks.

A	Dal	Dellos	Et	Ka	O or Ó	Us
Á	Dalla	Den	Ett	Ke	O' or 'O	Van
A'	Dallas	² Der	Gl'	L	Oi	Van de
Af	Dalle	Des	Gli	L'	Op	Van den
¹ Ag	³ Das	Det	Ha	La	Op de	Van der
Ai	³ De	Di	Hai	Las	'S	Vel
¹ Ak	De'	Dia	He	Le	Si	Ver
¹ Al	De la	Die	Heis	Les	T	Vom
Am	De las	Do	Hen	Lh'	'T	Von
¹ An	De lo	Dos	Het	Lhi	Ta	Von der
Ap	De los	Du	Hi	Li	Te	Von zu
¹ Ar	Degli	E	Hin	Lis	Ten	Y
¹ As	Dei	Een	Hinar	Lo	² Ter	Ye
Au	Del	Eene	Hinir	Los	To	Yn
Aus	Delah	Ei	Hinn	Lou	Um	Yr
Aux	Dell'	Ein	Hn	Lu	³ Uma	Z
¹ Az	Della	Eine	Hoi	Mia	Un	Zu
Bel	Dellas	Eit	I or í	Na	Una	Zum
D	Delle	¹ El	Il	Ni or Ni	Une	Zur
D'	Delli	Els	Im	Nje	Uno	
Da	Dello	En	Isa	Ny	Uns	

¹ If the name is an Arabic surname, this treatment does not apply. Instead, the name is considered a compound surname and first indicator value 2 is used.

² If the name is an Armenian surname, this treatment does not apply. Instead, the name is considered a compound surname and first indicator value 2 is used.

³ If the name is an Indian (India) surname, this treatment does not apply. Instead, the name is considered a compound surname and first indicator value 2 is used.

100 Heading-Personal Name

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicators

First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

Do not use value 3 (Name of family) in the first indicator position. This type of personal name is not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project.

Second Indicator - Nonsiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 100 fields:

#e - Relator term

#h - Medium

#x - General subdivision

#y - Chronological subdivision

#z - Geographic subdivision

#6 - Linkage

| Subfield #6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC NACO must be consulted before the following subfield is used:

#g - Miscellaneous information

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:

#e - Relator term (in AACR 2 formulated 100 fields)

#g - Miscellaneous information (in AACR 2 formulated 100 fields)

#h - Medium (in AACR 2 formulated 100 fields)

#6 - Linkage

110 Heading—Corporate Name

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 110 fields.

- | †e - Relator term
- | †h - Medium
- | †x - General subdivision
- | †y - Chronological subdivision
- | †z - Geographic subdivision
- | †6 - Linkage

Subfield †6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:

- | †e - Relator term (in AACR 2 formulated 110 fields)
- | †h - Medium (in AACR 2 formulated 110 fields)
- | †6 - Linkage

111 Heading—Meeting Name

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value **0** in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 111 fields:

- | †h - Medium
- | †x - General subdivision
- | †y - Chronological subdivision
- | †z - Geographic subdivision
- | †6 - Linkage

Subfield †6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:

- | †h - Medium (in AACR 2 formulated 111 fields)
- | †6 - Linkage

130 Heading–Uniform Title

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the uniform title when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 130 fields:

- | #h - Medium
- | #x - General subdivision
- | #y - Chronological subdivision
- | #z - Geographic subdivision
- | #6 - Linkage

Subfield #6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a uniform title is always omitted.

Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:

- | #h - Medium (in AACR 2 formulated 130 fields)
- | #6 - Linkage

150 Heading–Topical Term

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. Subject authorities are not within the scope of the NACO LSP program.

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a topical term heading is always omitted.

Subfield Code

- | LC does not use the following subfield:
 ‡6 - Linkage

151 Heading–Geographic Name

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 151 fields:

- ‡x - General subdivision
- ‡y - Chronological subdivision
- ‡z - Geographic subdivision
- ‡6 - Linkage

| Subfield ‡6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

Subfield Code

| LC does not use the following subfield:
‡6 - Linkage

Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

NACO LSP Usage:

Alternate Graphic Representation

Do not use subfield #6 (Linkage) in any of the tracing and reference fields. Records containing alternate graphic representation fields are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project. Subfield #6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

■ REFERENCE FIELDS

Subject authority records are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project. Do not use the following fields:

- 260 Complex See Reference—Subject
- 360 Complex See Also Reference—Subject

Do not use field 665 (History Reference). Instead, use 5XX See Also From Tracing fields with a subfield #w/0 (Control subfield/Special relationship) containing code a (Earlier heading) or b (Later heading) as appropriate.

LC NACO must be consulted before field 663 (Complex See Also Reference—Name), 664 (Complex See Reference—Name), and 666 (General Explanatory Reference—Name) are used.

■ TRACING FIELDS

Do not use the following subfield codes in 4XX and 5XX tracing fields:

- #i Reference instruction phrase
- #5 Institution to which field applies

Subfield #5 has not been implemented in the LC system.

Subfield Codes

#w - Control subfield in 4XX See From Tracing fields

—/0 Special relationship

Do not use the following codes:

- a - Earlier heading
- b - Later heading
- d - Acronym
- f - Musical composition
- g - Broader term
- h - Narrower term
- i - Reference instruction phrase in subfield #i

Code n (Not applicable) may be used when a subsequent character position in subfield #w is coded.

Tracings and References LC Guidelines

—/1 Tracing use restriction

Do not use the following codes:

- a - Name reference structure only
- b - Subject reference structure only
- c - Series reference structure only
- d - Name and subject reference structures
- e - Name and series reference structures
- f - Subject and series reference structures
- g - Name, subject, and series reference structures

Code n (Not applicable) may be used when a subsequent character position in subfield $\neq w$ is coded.

—/2 Earlier form of heading

Do not use the following code:

- o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)

Code a (Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)) is used when the tracing is for a linking reference from a pre-AACR 2 heading.

Code e (Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)) is used primarily when a reference from the former heading is appropriate under normal AACR 2 reference practice, and the former heading is not covered by code a. This includes former headings that were previously coded either as AACR 2 (code c) or *Non-AACR 2 form used with AACR 2* (code d). A reference should not automatically be made from the former heading in order to supply code e.

Code n (Not applicable) may be used when neither code a nor e applies and a subsequent character position in subfield $\neq w$ is coded.

—/3 Reference display

Do not use the following codes:

- c - Reference not displayed, field 663 used
- d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used

Code a (Reference not displayed) or b (Reference not displayed, field 664 used) may be used when appropriate for suppressing a cross reference display.

Code n (Not applicable) allows the generation of a cross reference display and need not be coded in subfield $\neq w/3$.

$\neq w$ - Control subfield in 5XX See Also From Tracing fields

—/0 Special relationship

Do not use the following codes:

- d - Acronym
- f - Musical composition
- g - Broader term
- h - Narrower term
- i - Reference instruction phrase in subfield $\neq i$

Code a (Earlier heading) or b (Later heading) may be used when appropriate for a 1XX/5XX relationship.

Code n (Not applicable) may be used when neither code a nor b applies and a subsequent character position in subfield $\neq w$ is coded.

Tracings and References LC Guidelines

—/1 Tracing use restriction

Do not use the following codes:

- a - Name reference structure only
- b - Subject reference structure only
- c - Series reference structure only
- d - Name and subject reference structures
- e - Name and series reference structures
- f - Subject and series reference structures
- g - Name, subject, and series reference structures

Code n (Not applicable) may be used when a subsequent character position in subfield $\neq w$ is coded.

—/2 Earlier form of heading

Do not use the following codes:

- a - Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)
- c - Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)
- o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)

Code n (Not applicable) may be used when a subsequent character position in subfield $\neq w$ is coded.

—/3 Reference display

Do not use the following codes:

- b - Reference not displayed, field 664 used
- d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used

Code a (Reference not displayed) or c (Reference not displayed, field 663 used) may be used when appropriate for suppressing a cross reference display.

. Code n (Not applicable) allows the generation of a cross reference and need not be coded in subfield $\neq w/3$.

LC Usage:

Alternate Graphic Representation

LC does not use alternate graphic representation fields in authority records.

■ REFERENCE FIELDS

LC does not use field 665 (History Reference). Records created this field.

■ TRACING FIELDS

Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields in 4XX and 5XX traci

- +i - Reference instruction phrase (All reference instructi
 $\neq w$ codes or are tag-related in the LC system.)
- #5 - Institution to which field applies

Tracings and References LC Guidelines

‡w - Control subfield in 4XX See From Tracing fields —

—/0 Special relationship

LC does not use the following codes:

- a - Earlier heading
- b - Later heading
- c - Acronym
- f - Musical composition
- g - Broader term
- h - Narrower term
- i - Reference instruction phrase in subfield ‡i

Code d may occur in LC records created before 1981.

—/1 Tracing use restriction

LC does not use the following codes:

- a - Name reference structure only
- b - Subject reference structure only
- c - Series reference structure only
- d - Name and subject reference structures
- e - Name and series reference structures
- f - Subject and series reference structures
- g - Name, subject, and series reference structures

—/2 Earlier form of heading

LC does not use the following code:

- o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)

Code a (Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)) is used when the tracing is for a linking reference from a pre-AACR 2 heading.

Code e (Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)) is used in the national name authority file primarily when a reference from the former heading is appropriate under normal AACR 2 reference practice, and the former heading is not covered by code a. This includes former headings that were previously coded either as AACR 2 (code c) or Non-AACR 2 form used with AACR 2 (code d). Code e is used in the national subject authority file when a reference from the former heading is appropriate under the reference practice of the applicable subject heading/thesaurus conventions.

The following obsolete codes may occur in LC records created before the adoption of AACR 2 in Jan. 1981, until these records have been evaluated (008/29, Reference evaluation, code a) and the authority record updated.

- b - AACR 1 [OBSOLETE]
- c - AACR 2 [OBSOLETE]
- d - Non-AACR 2 form used with AACR 2 [OBSOLETE]

—/3 Reference display

LC does not use the following codes:

- c - Reference not displayed, field 663 used
- d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used

LC has not used field 665 since mid-Feb. 1981.

Tracings and References LC Guidelines

#w - Control subfield in 5XX See Also from Tracing fields

—/0 Special relationship

LC does not use the following codes:

- d - Acronym
- f - Musical composition
- h - Narrower term
- i - Reference instruction phrase in subfield #i

Codes d and f may occur in LC records created before 1981.

—/1 Tracing use restriction

LC does not use the following codes:

- a - Name reference structure only
- b - Subject reference structure only
- c - Series reference structure only
- d - Name and subject reference structures
- e - Name and series reference structures
- f - Subject and series reference structures
- g - Name, subject, and series reference structures

Code b may occur in LC records created before 1988.

—/2 Earlier form of heading

LC does not use the following codes:

- a - Pre-AACR 2 form of heading (national name authority file)
- e - Earlier established form of heading (national authority file)
- o - Earlier established form of heading (other authority file)

—/3 Reference display

LC does not use the following codes:

- b - Reference not displayed, field 664 used
- d - Reference not displayed, field 665 used

LC has not used field 665 since mid-Feb. 1981. Records created before that time may contain code d in subfield #w/3.

360 Complex See Also Reference—Subject

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. Subject authority records are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project.

LC Usage:

This field is used to record complex see also references as they appear in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*.

400 See From Tracing—Personal Name

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicators

First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

Do not use value 3 (Family name) in the first indicator position. This type of personal name is not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project.

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 400 fields:

+e - Relator term

+h - Medium

+x - General subdivision

+y - Chronological subdivision

+z - Geographic subdivision

LC NACO must be consulted before subfield +g (Miscellaneous information) is used.

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 400 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

+i - Reference instruction phrase

+w - Control subfield

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial element of a name is always omitted.

Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfield in A:

+e - Relator term

+g - Miscellaneous information

+h - Medium

400 LC Guidelines

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 400 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

#i - Reference instruction phrase

#w - Control subfield

410 See From Tracing—Corporate Name

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 410 fields:

- #e - Relator term
- #h - Medium
- #x - General subdivision
- #y - Chronological subdivision
- #z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 410 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
 - #w - Control subfield
-

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfields in AACR 2 formulated 410 fields:

- #e - Relator term
- #h - Medium

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 410 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
- #w - Control subfield

411 See From Tracing—Meeting Name

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 411 fields:

- +h - Medium
- +x - General subdivision
- +y - Chronological subdivision
- +z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 411 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- +i - Reference instruction phrase
 - +w - Control subfield
-

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfield in AACR 2 formulated 411 fields:

- +h - Medium

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 411 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- +i - Reference instruction phrase
- +w - Control subfield

430 See From Tracing—Uniform Title

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the uniform title when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfield in 430 fields:

- +h - Medium
- +x - General subdivision
- +y - Chronological subdivision
- +z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 430 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- +i - Reference instruction phrase
 - +w - Control subfield
-

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a uniform title is always omitted.

Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfield +h in AACR 2 form

- +h - Medium

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 430 is g for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- +i - Reference instruction phrase
- +w - Control subfield

450 See From Tracing—Topical Term**NACO LSP Usage:**

Do not use this field. Subject authority records are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP program.

LC Usage:**Indicator****Second Indicator – Nonfiling characters**

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a topical term heading is always omitted.

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 450 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- +i - Reference instruction phrase
- +w - Control subfield

451 See From Tracing—Geographic Name

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 451 fields:

- #x - General subdivision
- #y - Chronological subdivision
- #z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 451 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
 - #w - Control subfield
-

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 451 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
- #w - Control subfield

500 See Also From Tracing—Personal Name

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicators

First Indicator - Type of personal name entry element

Do not use value 3 (Family name) in the first indicator position. This type of personal name is not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project.

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 500 fields:

#e - Relator term

#h - Medium

#x - General subdivision

#y - Chronological subdivision

#z - Geographic subdivision

LC NACO must be consulted before subfield #g (Miscellaneous information) is used.

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 500 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

#i - Reference instruction phrase

#w - Control subfield

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfields in AACR 2 formulated 500 fields:

#e - Relator term

#g - Miscellaneous information

#h - Medium

500 LC Guidelines

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 500 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase**
- #w - Control subfield**

510 See Also From Tracing—Corporate Name

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 510 fields:

- ‡e - Relator term
- ‡h - Medium
- ‡x - General subdivision
- ‡y - Chronological subdivision
- ‡z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 510 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
 - ‡w - Control subfield
-

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfields in AACR 2 formulated 510 fields:

- ‡e - Relator term
- ‡h - Medium

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 510 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- ‡i - Reference instruction phrase
- ‡w - Control subfield

511 See Also From Tracing—Meeting Name

NACO LSP USAGE:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 511 fields:

- #h - Medium
- #x - General subdivision
- #y - Chronological subdivision
- #z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 511 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
 - #w - Control subfield
-

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfield in AACR 2 formulated 511 fields:

- #h - Medium

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 511 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
- #w - Control subfield

530 See Also From Tracing—Uniform Title

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the uniform title when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 530 fields:

- #h - Medium
- #x - General subdivision
- #y - Chronological subdivision
- #z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 530 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
 - #w - Control subfield
-

LC USAGE:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a uniform title is always omitted.

Subfield Code

LC does not use the following subfield in AACR 2 formulated 530 fields:

- #h - Medium

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 530 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
- #w - Control subfield

550 See Also From Tracing—Topical Term

NACO LSP Usage:

Field 550 may be used for tracing a reference from a topical term to a name or series 1XX heading.

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the topical term when formulating the entry element of the heading.

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 550 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
 - #w - Control subfield
-

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a topical term heading is always omitted.

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 550 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
- #w - Control subfield

551 See Also From Tracing—Geographic Name

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

Always use value 0 in the second indicator position. Do not use values 1-9. Omit an initial article that is not an integral part of the name when formulating the entry element of the heading.

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields in 551 fields:

- +x - General subdivision
- +y - Chronological subdivision
- +z - Geographic subdivision

NACO LSP usage for the following subfield codes in field 551 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
 - #w - Control subfields
-

LC Usage:

Indicator

Second Indicator - Nonfiling characters

LC does not use values 1-9. An initial article that is not an integral part of the entry element of a name is always omitted.

LC usage for the following subfield codes in field 551 is given in the *LC Guidelines* section for the Tracing and Reference fields:

- #i - Reference instruction phrase
- #w - Control subfield

663 Complex See Also Reference—Name

NACO LSP Usage:

Simple cross references are preferred over complex cross references. Field 663 is used only when the relationship of other names to the name contained in the 1XX Heading cannot be adequately expressed by simple see also cross references constructed from field 1XX and multiple 5XX See Also From Tracing fields.

LC NACO must be consulted before this field is used.

LC Usage:

LC uses field 663 only when the relationship of other names to the name contained in field 1XX cannot be adequately expressed by simple see also cross references constructed from field 1XX and multiple 5XX fields.

LC did not implement field 663 until March 1984. Before that time, LC used field 664 (Complex See Reference—Name) for all complex reference situations. These reference records contain an *established* heading in the 1XX field and a *see also* reference in field 664. The evaluation of references process in an existing authority record may result in the deletion of the reference record and either the addition of field 663 to the related established heading record or the adjustment of the subfield *#w* coding in the existing 5XX fields.

664 Complex See Reference—Name

NACO LSP Usage:

Simple cross references are preferred over complex cross references. A reference record containing a 664 field is used only when the relationship of an unestablished name and one or more established names cannot be adequately expressed by simple see also cross references constructed from the 1XX Heading and multiple 4XX See From Tracing fields in an established heading record.

LC NACO must be consulted before this field is used.

LC Usage:

Since January 1981, LC uses field 664 in a reference record only when the relationship of an unestablished name and one or more established names cannot be adequately expressed by simple see also cross references constructed from field 1XX and multiple 4XX fields in an established heading record.

Reference records created by LC prior to January 1981 that are no longer valid under this practice are deleted and the subfield #w coding in the 4XX fields in the established heading record are adjusted whenever the record must be changed for any reason.

Prior to March 1984, LC used field 664 in a reference record for complex see also references. These reference records contain an *established* heading in the 1XX field and a *see also* reference in field 664. The evaluation of references process in an existing authority record may result in the deletion of the reference record and either the addition of a 663 Complex See Also Reference field to the related established heading record or the adjustment of the subfield #w coding in the existing 5XX fields.

665 History Reference

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. Connect sequences of related headings by 5XX See Also From Tracing fields with their \$w/0 subfields appropriately coded.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field. Appropriately coded subfield \$w/0 in 5XX See Also From Tracing fields are used to connect sequences of related headings. A 665 field in a record created prior to February 1981 is deleted and the 5XX fields are adjusted whenever the 665 field must be changed for any reason.

666 General Explanatory Reference—Name**NACO LSP Usage:**

LC NACO must be consulted before this field is used.

LC Usage:

LC uses field 666 only when individual references from each heading related to the characteristic are impractical.

| 64X Series Treatment—General Information

NACO LSP Usage:

Alternate Graphic Representation

Do not use subfield #6 (Linkage) in any of the 64X Series Treatment fields. Records containing alternate graphic representation fields are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project. Subfield #6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use alternate graphic representation fields in authority records.

640 Series Dates of Publication and/or Volume Designation

NACO LSP Usage:

Indicator

First Indicator - Note format style

Do not use value 0 (Formatted style) in the first indicator position. Always use an unformatted style note.

LC Usage:

Indicator

First Indicator - Note format style

LC does not use a formatted style note, thus does not use value 0 (Formatted style).

641 Series Numbering Peculiarities

NACO LSP Usage:

There are no special NACO LSP requirements for this field.

LC Usage:

There is no special LC practice for this field.

642 Series Numbering Example

NACO LSP Usage:

In a single 642 field, a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for the Library of Congress (DLC) precedes a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for an LSP participant. Only the NACO LSP participant creating a Series Authority Record may record its series numbering example in field 642 or add its NUC symbol to the field 642 containing the series numbering example for the Library of Congress.

When a pair of 642 fields are appropriate because an LSP participant's series numbering example differs from that of the Library of Congress, the 642 field representing the Library of Congress example precedes that of the LSP participant.

Inclusion of the 642 field relating to the NACO LSP participant is optional unless the participant is also contributing a bibliographic record related to the series. When field 642 is used, it must contain a subfield #5 to identify the user of the example in subfield #a.

LC Usage:

- | There is no special LC practice for this field.

643 Series Place and Publisher/Issuing Body

NACO LSP Usage:

There are no special NACO LSP requirements for this field.

LC Usage:

LC does not include brackets around data in this field, even though information may have been bracketed in a corresponding bibliographic record.

|

644 Series Analysis Practice

NACO LSP Usage:

In a single 644 field, a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for the Library of Congress (DLC) precedes a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for an LSP participant. Only the NACO LSP participant creating a Series Authority Record may record its series analysis practice in field 644, or add its NUC symbol to the field 644 containing the series analysis practice for the Library of Congress.

When a pair of 644 fields are appropriate because an LSP participant's analysis practice differs from that of the Library of Congress, the 644 field representing the Library of Congress practice precedes that of the LSP participant.

Inclusion of the field 644 relating to the NACO LSP participant is optional unless the participant is also contributing a bibliographic record related to the series. When field 644 is used, it must contain a subfield #5 to identify the user of the analysis practice.

LC Usage:

LC generally does not analyze issues of serials. If an issue is ever analyzed (because it is a special issue, etc.) code n is still used in subfield #a. The volume which was analyzed is noted in a subfield #b as an exception (e.g.: #an#bexcept vol. 4, no.3).

|

645 Series Tracing Practice

NACO LSP Usage:

In a single 645 field, a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for the Library of Congress (DLC) precedes a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for an LSP participant. Only the NACO LSP participant creating a Series Authority Record may record its series tracing practice in field 645, or add its NUC symbol to the field 645 containing the series tracing practice for the Library of Congress.

When a pair of 645 fields are appropriate because an LSP participant's tracing practice differs from that of the Library of Congress, the 645 field representing the Library of Congress practice precedes that of the LSP participant.

Inclusion of the field 645 relating to the NACO LSP participant is optional unless the participant is also contributing a bibliographic record related to the series. When field 645 is used, it must contain a subfield #5 to identify the user of the tracing practice.

LC Usage:

When LC tracing practice has changed due to the adoption of AACR 2, an additional 645 field is added to a series authority record to represent the earlier practice. The first 645 represents the AACR 2 practice, with the phrase "items cataloged after Dec. 31, 1980" in subfield #d. A second 645 represents the pre-AACR 2 practice, with the phrase "items cataloged before Jan. 1, 1981" in subfield #d.

646 Series Classification Practice

NACO LSP Usage:

In a single 646 field, a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for the Library of Congress (DLC) precedes a subfield #5 containing the NUC symbol for an LSP participant. Only the NACO LSP participant creating a Series Authority Record may record its series classification practice in field 646, or add its NUC symbol to the field 646 containing the series classification practice for the Library of Congress.

When a pair of 646 fields are appropriate because an LSP participant's classification practice differs from that of the Library of Congress, the 646 field representing the Library of Congress practice precedes that of the LSP participant.

Inclusion of the field 646 relating to the NACO LSP participant is optional unless the participant is also contributing a bibliographic record related to the series. When field 646 is used, it must contain a subfield #5 to identify the user of the classification practice.

LC Usage:

LC practice is to carry over any pre-AACR 2 classification practice to its AACR 2 cataloging.

| 66X-68X Notes—General Information

NACO LSP Usage:

Alternate Graphic Representation

Do not use subfield #6 (Linkage) in any of the 66X-68X Note fields. Records containing alternate graphic representation fields are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project. Subfield #6 has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use alternate graphic representation fields in authority records.

| 667 Nonpublic General Note

NACO LSP Usage:

Subfield Codes

Do not use the following subfields:

 ‡5 Institution to which field applies

 ‡6 Linkage

LC has not implemented subfields ‡5 and ‡6.

LC Usage:

LC uses field 667 to provide information that is not cited from a source but that may be useful agencies outside LC.

Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:

 ‡5 Institution to which field applies

 ‡6 Linkage

670 Source Data Found

NACO LSP Usage:

There are no special NACO LSP requirements for this field.

LC Usage:

LC practice for this field is to leave a space between an open date ending with a hyphen and the colon preceding the location of data in subfield #b (e.g.: ... 1967- :).

For series authority records, the parenthetical statement of the form of name/title and other information is omitted from subfield #b in the first 670 field recorded. Subsequent 670 fields contain the full citation statement.

675 Source Data Not Found

NACO LSP Usage:

There are no special NACO LSP requirements for this field.

LC Usage:

There is no special LC practice for this field.

678 Epitome

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field in current authority records. The field was used to preserve useful biographical/historical information pertaining to the 1XX heading when manual authority cards were converted to machine-readable form.

| 680 Public General Note

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field.

LC Usage:

This field is used to record public general notes as they appear in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*.

Subfield Codes

LC does not use the following subfields:

- ‡5 Institution to which field applies
- ‡6 Linkage

681 Subject Example Tracing Note**NACO LSP Usage:**

Do not use this field. Subject authority records are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP program.

LC Usage:

This field is used to record "example under" and "note under" notes as they appear in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*.

682 Deleted Heading Information**NACO LSP Usage:**

Do not use this field.

LC Usage:

LC uses this field to explain why an authority record in its Subject Authority File is being deleted.

| 688 Application History Note

NACO LSP Usage:

Do not use this field. Subject authority records are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project.

LC Usage:

LC does not use this field.

| 880 Alternate Graphic Representation

NACO LSP Usage:

Alternate Graphic Representation

Do not use this field. Records containing alternate graphic representation fields are not within the scope of the present NACO LSP project. Field 880 has not been implemented in the LC system.

LC Usage:

LC does not use alternate graphic representation fields in authority records.